

The Complete  
Self-Study  
Guide

# MALAY FOR EVERYONE

Designed to Help Learners  
Understand Grammar,  
Master Reading and  
Writing Skills

- Guarantees rapid mastery of the Malay language
- Written in simple language with abundant examples
- With effective exercises to enable learners to acquire a practical knowledge of the language
- Incorporates a mini Malay-English Dictionary

**Othman Sulaiman**

PELANDUK

**Scanned specially for**  
**Uz-Translations**

**by alexius108**



**MALAY**  
**FOR EVERYONE**





# MALAY FOR EVERYONE

Designed to Help Learners  
Understand Grammar,  
Master Reading and  
Writing Skills

Othman Sulaiman



Pelanduk  
Publications

Published by

**Pelanduk Publications (M) Sdn. Bhd.**

(Co No: 113307-W)

12 Jalan SS13/3E, Subang Jaya Industrial Estate,

47500 Subang Jaya, Selangor, Malaysia.

e-mail: [rusaone@tm.net.my](mailto:rusaone@tm.net.my)

website: [www.pelanduk.com](http://www.pelanduk.com)

All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2000 (revised) Pelanduk Publications.

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form or by any means without prior permission from the copyright holder.

1st & 2nd printing 1990, 3rd printing 1991

4th printing 1993, 5th printing 1994

6th printing 1995, 7th printing 1996

8th printing 1997, 9th printing 1998

10th printing 2000 (revised), 11th printing 2001

12th printing 2003, 13th printing 2005

14th printing 2008, 15th printing 2009

Perpustakaan Negara Malaysia Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

Malay for everyone / Othman Sulaiman

Includes bibliographies.

ISBN 978-967-978-322-3

1. Bahasa Malaysia—Usage. 2. Bahasa Malaysia—Grammar.

I. Title.

499.2382421

Printed and bound in Malaysia

# CONTENTS

Preface  
The Script  
Pronunciation

<b>LESSON 1:</b>	<b>1</b>
NOUNS (Singular and Plural: Copulatives)	
PRONOUNS (Demonstrative Pronouns)	
<b>LESSON 2:</b>	<b>5</b>
NOUNS (Negatives [bukan])	
<b>LESSON 3:</b>	<b>8</b>
NOUNS (Interrogatives)	
<b>LESSON 4:</b>	<b>13</b>
NOUNS (Foreign Words)	

PRONOUNS  
(Personal Pronouns)

VERBS  
(Verb-to-have—*ada*)

**LESSON 5:** **19**

VERBS  
(Verb-to-have—Negatives—*tidak ada*)

**LESSON 6:** **22**

VERBS  
(Verb-to-have—Interrogatives)

**LESSON 7:** **27**

NUMERALS  
(Cardinal Numbers)

**LESSON 8:** **31**

CLASSIFIERS  
(*Orang; Ekor; Batang; Buah; Biji*)

**LESSON 9:** **36**

ADJECTIVES  
(Qualitative and Demonstrative)

**LESSON 10:** **42**

ADJECTIVES  
(Adjectives of Number)

**LESSON 11:** **46**

GENDER  
  
NUMBERS  
(Ordinal Numbers)

<b>LESSON 12:</b>	<b>52</b>
ADJECTIVES (Possessive Adjectives)	
<b>LESSON 13:</b>	<b>59</b>
ADJECTIVES (Positive and Comparative)	
<b>LESSON 14:</b>	<b>65</b>
ADJECTIVES (Superlative)	
<b>LESSON 15:</b>	<b>72</b>
PRONOUNS (Interrogative Pronouns; Relative Pronouns)	
<b>LESSON 16:</b>	<b>77</b>
VERBS (Class I Verbs: <i>pergi; naik; etc.</i> )	
<b>LESSON 17:</b>	<b>83</b>
VERBS (Tenses of Verbs [1])	
<b>LESSON 18:</b>	<b>89</b>
VERBS (Class II Verbs: <i>me ...</i> [1])	
<b>LESSON 19:</b>	<b>96</b>
VERBS (Class II Verbs: <i>me ...</i> [2])	

<b>LESSON 20:</b>	<b>100</b>
VERBS (Class III Verbs: <i>ber ...</i> )	
<b>LESSON 21:</b>	<b>108</b>
VERBS (Class IV Verbs: <i>ter...</i> )	
<b>LESSON 22:</b>	<b>114</b>
VERBS (Class V Verbs: <i>me ... kan</i> )	
<b>LESSON 23:</b>	<b>121</b>
VERBS (Class VI Verbs: <i>me ... i</i> )	
<b>LESSON 24:</b>	<b>127</b>
VERBS (Active and Passive Voice)	
<b>LESSON 25:</b>	<b>135</b>
VERBS (Tenses of Verbs ... [2])	
<b>LESSON 26:</b>	<b>140</b>
VERBS (Auxiliary Verbs)	
<b>LESSON 27:</b>	<b>145</b>
ADVERBS (Adverbs of Manner)	

<b>LESSON 28:</b>	<b>150</b>
ADVERBS (Other kinds of Adverbs)	
<b>LESSON 29:</b>	<b>155</b>
PREPOSITIONS ( <i>Dari; Daripada; Ke; Kepada; Pada; Sampai; Dengan; Oleh</i> )	
<b>LESSON 30:</b>	<b>162</b>
PREPOSITIONS ( <i>di atas; di bawah; di hadapan; di belakang; di dalam; di luar; di sebelah</i> )	
<b>LESSON 31:</b>	<b>167</b>
CONJUNCTIONS	
<b>LESSON 32:</b>	<b>173</b>
TIME AND DAY (Time; Days of the Week; Months of the Year; Date)	
<b>LESSON 33:</b>	<b>178</b>
PERSONAL PRONOUNS (First and Second Persons)	
<b>LESSON 34:</b>	<b>184</b>
PRONOUNS (Personal Pronouns used in Letter-writing)	
<b>LESSON 35:</b>	<b>189</b>
MORE CLASSIFIERS ( <i>Helai; Pucuk; Bilah; Keping; Ketul; Buku; Kuntum; Pintu; Rawan</i> )	

<b>LESSON 36:</b>	<b>194</b>
FORMS OF ADDRESS	
<b>LESSON 37:</b>	<b>201</b>
NOUNS (Singular and Plural)	
<b>LESSON 38:</b>	<b>206</b>
NOUNS (Derivative Nouns)	
<b>LESSON 39:</b>	<b>213</b>
VERBS (The Imperative: Suffix <i>-kan</i> )	
<b>LESSON 40:</b>	<b>219</b>
VERBS (Verbs of Emotion)	
<b>LESSON 41:</b>	<b>224</b>
VERBS (Class VII Verbs)	
<b>LESSON 42:</b>	<b>231</b>
VERBS (Class VIII Verbs)	
<b>LESSON 43:</b>	<b>237</b>
DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES	
<b>LESSON 44:</b>	<b>242</b>
ADVERB PHRASES	



<b>LESSON 45:</b>	<b>247</b>
MORE DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES	
<b>LESSON 46:</b>	<b>253</b>
THE PREFIX <i>se</i>	
<b>LESSON 47:</b>	<b>259</b>
AFFIXES	
<b>LESSON 48:</b>	<b>266</b>
REDUPLICATION	
Appendix A—List of Class I Verbs	<b>273</b>
Appendix B—Idiomatic Expressions	<b>275</b>
Appendix C—Vocabulary	<b>285</b>



## **PREFACE**

This is a specially designed teach-yourself book for those who are conversant in English and have a desire to learn and master the Malay language, in the shortest time possible, in the privacy and comfort of their homes or at their own leisure.

Malay or Bahasa Melayu has a rich history rivaling that of many European languages. During the Middle Ages in Europe, Malay rulers spoke an increasingly refined form of Classical Malay which had developed over the centuries from the cruder bazaar Malay of the archipelago's traders. In the 1400s, by the time the Malacca Sultanate had been set up, epics such as the *Malay Annals* achieved a style and elegance second to none.

During the colonial era, Classical Malay almost disappeared when the elite began to adopt the language of the colonial rulers. However, bazaar Malay survived among the traders and ordinary folk, and it was this language, together with a renewed interest in Classical Malay, which formed the basis of the National Language after Malaysia's independence in 1957. Since then Malay has been enriched by the addition of a wide range of new words and expressions consistent with its development as a language of modern technology. Moreover, co-operation with Indonesia, which also adopted Malay as its national language, has resulted in greater

standardization of spelling and terminology. Today, the language is known and used by more than 150 million Asians.

This book guarantees a thorough grounding in all the basic elements of the Malay language needed to secure a full and polished command of the language. This is not a dull and dry conventional coursebook, the lessons having been methodically prepared to ensure rapid acquisition of the Malay language.

*The Publisher*

## **THE SCRIPT**

The Malay language or Bahasa Melayu uses two distinct scripts: Jawi and Rumi.

Jawi is the Arabic form of writing which was introduced to this country by Muslim missionaries in the 15th century, and the knowledge of it is an advantage to the study of advanced Bahasa Melayu and classical Malay literature.

Rumi is, of course, the Roman alphabet which came into use at the advent of British administration. For the purpose of studying the language, it is quite sufficient to know only one of the scripts, and since Rumi is considered to be the easier of the two and also the official script, it is the script used in this book.

# PRONUNCIATION

## The Vowels

It is an important point to remember that every syllable of a Bahasa Melayu word requires a vowel, without which it would be soundless. In Bahasa Melayu, there are six vowel phonemes, namely *a*, *e*, *e* (*pepet*), *i*, *o* and *u*.

*a* is pronounced *aa* or *ar* as in **tar**, **bar**, and therefore:

*saya* (I) is pronounced *sa-yaa*  
*mata* (eyes) is pronounced *ma-taa*  
*kaya* (rich) is pronounced *ka-yaa*

*e* is pronounced *ere* or *are* as in **mare** or **hare** or **pare**, and therefore:

*meja* (table) is pronounced *mare-jaa*  
*sewa* (rent) is pronounced *sare-waa*

*e* (*pepet*) is pronounced *err*, and the sound is very short indeed, therefore:

*keras* (monkey) is pronounced *kraa*  
*peta* (map) is pronounced *ptaa*

*i* is pronounced *ee* as in **feed**, **deed**, etc., but the sound is not long and therefore:

*pipi* (cheek) is pronounced *pee-pee*

*biji* (seed) is pronounced *bee-jee*

*kiri* (left) is pronounced *kee-ree*

*o* is pronounced *or* or *aw* as in **law**, **raw**, etc., and therefore:

*bola* (ball) is pronounced *baw-laa*

*roti* (bread) is pronounced *raw-tee*

*topi* (hat) is pronounced *taw-pee*

*u* is pronounced *oo* as in **boot**, **soot**, etc., and therefore:

*susu* (milk) is pronounced *soo-soo*

*buku* (book) is pronounced *boo-koo*

*guru* (teacher) is pronounced *goo-roo*

In closed syllables, that is to say, when these vowels are followed by a consonant, the above rules still stand. Examples:

*sayap* (wing) is pronounced *sa-yaap*

*padang* (field) is pronounced *pa-daang*

*merah* (red) is pronounced *mare-raah*

*dewi* (goddess) is pronounced *dare-wee*

*perang* (war) is pronounced *praang*

*ketam* (crab) is pronounced *ktaam*

*pipit* (sparrow) is pronounced *pee-peet*

*kikis* (to scrape) is pronounced *kee-kees*

*lompat* (to jump) is pronounced *lorm-paat*

*tongkat* (walking stick) is pronounced *tong-kaat*

*kasut* (shoes) is pronounced *ka-soot*

*rumput* (grass) is pronounced *room-poot*

## Diphthongs

The diphthongs are *ai*, *au* and *oi*.

*ai* is pronounced *igh* or *ie* as in **sigh** or **tie** respectively, and therefore:

*misai* (moustache) is pronounced *mee-sigh*  
*pantai* (beach) is pronounced *paan-tie*  
*tupai* (squirrel) is pronounced *too-pie*

*au* is pronounced *ow* as in **now**, **how**, **cow**, etc., and therefore:

*kerbau* (buffalo) is pronounced *ker-bow*  
*hijau* (green) is pronounced *hee-jow*  
*pisau* (knife) is pronounced *pee-sow*

*oi* is pronounced almost like the English *oy* in **boy**, **toy**, **joy**, etc., and therefore:

*kaloi* (a fish) is pronounced *kar-loy*  
*amboi* (oh!) is pronounced *um-boy*  
*tampoi* (a tree) is pronounced *tum-poy*

## The Consonants

In general, the pronunciation of consonants in Bahasa Melayu is the same as in English, but the following should be given special attention.

*c* is pronounced *ch* as in **chair**, **chin**, **much**, etc.

*g* is always hard such as in **garden**, **gun**, **globe**, etc. not as in **ginger**.

*h* when used as an initial is very soft and hardly audible, e.g. *hidung* (nose), *hulu* (handle), etc. The medial *h* should be distinctly pronounced when it stands between two similar or different vowels. Examples:



<i>pa/h/at</i>	chisel
<i>po/h/on</i>	tree
<i>sa/h/bat</i>	companion
<i>si/h/at</i>	healthy
<i>ma/h/ir</i>	skilled
<i>ba/h/u</i>	shoulder

The final *h* is soft but unlike the English *h*, this must be distinctly pronounced. Examples:

<i>leba/h</i>	bee
<i>ruma/h</i>	house
<i>mera/h</i>	red
<i>sawa/h</i>	rice-field
<i>tana/h</i>	land

The final *k* is soft and hardly audible. It is not exploded as in English. Examples:

<i>budak</i>	child
<i>perak</i>	silver
<i>tarik</i>	to pull

*r* as a final letter in a penultimate syllable, should be distinctly pronounced. Examples:

<i>kertas</i>	paper
<i>harta</i>	property
<i>derma</i>	donation

But if it falls in the final syllable, it is hardly audible. Examples:

<i>lapar</i>	hungry
<i>pasir</i>	sand
<i>telur</i>	egg

*y* and *x* are used only in the spelling of borrowed words.

There are Bahasa Melayu sounds which are represented by two letters, in other words, they can be considered as two-lettered consonants. They are: *ng*, *sy*, *dh*, *gh*, *kh* and *nya*; *nġ* has the same value as it is in English.

*sy* is the equivalent of *sh* in English.

*dh*, *gh* and *kh* are used in the spelling of words originating from Arabic, and there are no such sounds in the English language. *gh* almost resembles the *r* in the French word *Paris*. Examples:

<i>masyghul</i>	sad
<i>ghaib</i>	to disappear
<i>ghalib</i>	usual

*kh* is more or less equivalent to the Scottish *ch* in *loch*. Examples:

<i>khabar</i>	news
<i>ikhlas</i>	sincere
<i>tawarikh</i>	history

*ny* sound is also absent in English. It should be pronounced like the *n* in the Spanish word *Señor*. Therefore, the words:

*minyak* (oil) should be pronounced *mi-nyak*  
not *min-yak*  
or *miniak*

*banyak* (many, much) should be pronounced *bar-nyak*  
not *barn-yak*  
or *baniak*

*nyanyi* (to sing) should be pronounced *nya-nyi*  
not *nia-ni*

# LESSON 1

## **NOUNS**

**(Singular and Plural; Copulatives)**

## **PRONOUNS**

**(Demonstrative Pronouns)**

In English, we generally have to add one or more letters to the singular Noun in order to make it plural. In other words, the singular and the plural have different forms. It is not so in Bahasa Melayu.

A Bahasa Melayu Noun in the singular may be used in the plural without changing its form. We can almost always tell the number by the context. There are a few occasions, however, when a Bahasa Melayu sentence needs further information for clarifying the number. This is one of the important differences between English and Bahasa Melayu. Study the following sentences:

*Saya ada buku*, may either mean  
I have a book; (singular) or  
I have books. (plural)

*Gunung itu tinggi*, means  
That mountain is high. (singular)

*Lembu makan rumput,* means  
Cows eat grass. (plural)

When plurality is to be specifically indicated, Numerals or Quantifiers or Numerals with Classifiers are attached to the Nouns; and if the number is not stated, the Nouns are reduplicated.

*Ahmad ada lima ringgit.* (Numeral)  
Ahmad has **five** ringgit.

*Ramai orang minum kopi.* (Quantifier)  
**Many** people drink coffee.

*Dia membeli lima ekor ikan.* (Numeral with Classifier)  
He bought **five** fish.

*Pelajar-pelajar itu rajin.* (Reduplication)  
The **students** are hard-working.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*bakul*, basket

*buku*, book

*fail*, file

*meja*, table

*pen*, pen

*kerusi*, chair

*komputer*, computer

*lampu*, lamp

*gambar*, picture

*pembaris*, ruler

*kamus*, dictionary

*pensel*, pencil

*surat*, letter

*alat rakam kaset*,  
cassette recorder

## Demonstrative Pronouns

In Bahasa Melayu, there are only two words used as Demonstrative Pronouns, namely *ini* and *itu*. The word *ini* stands for *this*

and *these*; and *itu* stands for *that* and *those*. Here again, you see that no distinction is made between singular and plural.

## Copulatives

The English copula *am*, *is*, *are*, *was* and *were* are not normally rendered in Bahasa Melayu.

*Saya pelajar.*

I am a student.

*Ini buku.*

This is a book; or These are books.

*Itu kerusi.*

That is a chair; or Those are chairs.

*Ini gambar.*

This is a picture; or These are pictures.

*Itu lampu.*

That is a lamp; or Those are lamps.

## Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. This is a computer.
2. This is a dictionary.
3. This is a cassette recorder.
4. That is a letter.
5. These are pencils.
6. Those are baskets.
7. That is a picture.
8. Those are lamps.
9. This is a ruler.

10. That is a file.

Now check your answers with the correct translation below:

1. *Ini komputer.*
2. *Ini kamus.*
3. *Ini alat rakam kaset.*
4. *Itu surat.*
5. *Ini pensel.*
6. *Itu bakul.*
7. *Itu gambar.*
8. *Itu lampu.*
9. *Ini pembaris.*
10. *Itu fail.*

## LESSON 2

### NOUNS

#### (Negatives [bukan])

When you want to turn an affirmative sentence into the negative, to contradict a previous statement, question or thought, you place the word *bukan* immediately before the word it qualifies.

*Ini kerusi, bukan bangku.*

This is a chair, not a bench.

*Itu majalah, bukan jurnal.*

This is a magazine, not a journal.

*Ini pensel, bukan berus.*

These are pencils, not brushes.

*Itu kerusi, bukan meja.*

Those are chairs, not tables.

### Words to Remember

#### Nouns

*bangku*, bench

*jam*, watch, clock

*kipas*, fan

*laci*, drawer

*loceng*, bell

*mancis*, matches

*pisau*, knife

*berus*, brush

*cakera laser*, laser disc

*suratkhabar*, newspaper

*majalah*, magazine  
*kayu bedik*, joystick

*jurnal*, journal  
*tetikus*, mouse

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. That is a “mouse”, not a “joystick”.  
(used with a computer)
2. This is a laser diskette, not a compact diskette.
3. This is a magazine, not a newspaper.
4. This is a fan, not a bell.
5. This is a pencil, not a pen.
6. That is a drawer, not a table.
7. Those are clocks, not lamps.
8. This is a bench, not a chair.
9. That is a knife, not a pen.
10. Those are brushes, not pencils.
11. That is a basket, not a fan.
12. These are magazines, not books.

Now check your answers with the correct translation below:

1. *Itu tetikus, bukan kayu bedik.*  
(digunakan dengan komputer)
2. *Ini cakera laser, bukan cakera padat.*
3. *Ini majalah, bukan suratkhobar.*
4. *Ini kipas, bukan loceng.*
5. *Ini pensel, bukan pen.*
6. *Itu laci, bukan meja.*
7. *Itu jam, bukan lampu.*
8. *Ini bangku, bukan kerusi.*
9. *Itu pisau, bukan pen.*
10. *Itu berus, bukan pensel.*



11. *Itu bakul, bukan kipas.*
12. *Ini majalah, bukan buku.*

## LESSON 3

### NOUNS (Interrogatives)

The interrogative form is indicated either by inflection of a declarative sentence, or by placing the particle *kah* to a word in a declarative sentence. The word that has *kah* attached to it has the most emphasis.

Hence, the interrogative sentence, *Is that medicine?* may be rendered:

*Itu ubat?* (by inflection, that is by raising the voice) or

*Itukah ubat?* (emphasis on *itu*) or

*Itu ubatkah?* (emphasis on *ubat*)

Similarly, the sentence, *Is this a lamp?* may be rendered:

*Ini lampu?* or

*Inikah lampu?* or

*Ini lampukah?*

The interrogative sentences: *What is that?* and *What are those?* are similarly rendered: *Itu apa?* or *Apa itu?* It should be noted that the position of a word determines its emphasis. The earlier it occurs, the more emphasis is attached to it.

**Note** In conversation, the words *itu* and *ini* in sentences such as *Apa itu?* and *Apa ini?* are often contracted to *tu* and *ni* respectively.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*anak kunci*, key

*mikrofon*, microphone

*katil*, bed

*ibu kunci*, padlock

*mancis*, matches

*perakam video*, videotape  
recorder

*pintu*, door

*kipas*, fan

*tangga*, ladder, stairs

*sampul surat*, envelope

*bunga*, flower

*cakera padat*, compact  
diskette

### Miscellaneous

*apa*, what

*bukan*, no, not

*ya*, yes

*tidak*, no

## Conversation

*Ini apa?*

*Ini anak kunci.*

*Ini apa?*

*Ini mancis.*

*Itu apa?*

*Itu berus.*

*Itu apa?*

*Itu sampul surat.*

*Ini lampukah?*

*Bukan, ini bukan lampu, ini bakul.*

*Itu kipaskah?*

*Ya, itu kipas.*

*Itu jamkah?*

*Bukan, itu bukan jam.*

*Itu apa?*

*Itu gambar.*

*Ini bungakah?*

*Ya, ini bunga.*

### Exercise

You will find two columns of Bahasa Melayu words in the table below. Take words from Column 1 and Column 2 and form sentences with them.

Column 1	Column 2
<i>Ini</i>	<i>bunga.</i> <i>disket.</i> <i>gambar.</i> <i>kamus.</i> <i>kerusi.</i> <i>lampu.</i> <i>bakul.</i> <i>surat.</i>
<i>Itu</i>	<i>pisau.</i> <i>jam.</i> <i>loceng.</i> <i>majalah.</i> <i>tingkap.</i> <i>katil.</i> <i>pintu.</i>

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. Is this a compact diskette?
2. Is this a microphone?
3. Is this medicine?
4. Is that a videotape recorder? (VTR)
5. Is that a door?
6. Are these matches?
7. Are those pencils?
8. Is this a magazine?
9. Are those pictures?

10. Is that a basket?

Now check your answers with the correct translation below.  
Any one of the three renderings is correct:

1. *Ini cakera padat?*  
*Inikah cakera padat?*  
*Ini cakera padatkah?*
2. *Ini mikrofon?*  
*Inikah mikrofon?*  
*Ini mikrofonkah?*
3. *Ini ubat?*  
*Inikah ubat?*  
*Ini ubatkah?*
4. *Itu perakam pita video?*  
*Itukah perakam video?*  
*Itu perakam videokah?*
5. *Itu pintu?*  
*Itukah pintu?*  
*Itu pintukah?*
6. *Ini mancis?*  
*Inikah mancis?*  
*Ini manciskah?*
7. *Itu pensel?*  
*Itukah pensel?*  
*Itu penselkah?*
8. *Ini majalah?*  
*Inikah majalah?*  
*Ini majalahkah?*
9. *Itu gambar?*

*Itukah gambar?*

*Itu gambarkah?*

10. *Itu bakul?*

*Itukah bakul?*

*Itu bakulkah?*

## LESSON 4

### **NOUNS**

**(Foreign Words)**

### **PRONOUNS**

**(Personal Pronouns)**

### **VERBS**

**(Verb-to-have—ada)**

In the list of words that you have so far learnt, you might noticed that there are words which resemble or sound like English words. Yes, a good number of English words have been borrowed and assimilated into Bahasa Melayu—a few with their original spelling but many with new modified forms, that is they are spelt according to the Bahasa Melayu phonetic system. More and more English words are being incorporated into Bahasa Melayu, and are accepted as part and parcel of its vocabulary, especially technical and scientific terms.

We also have words which are derived from other languages, such as Arabic, Chinese, and various Indian dialects.

The words *lampu*, *meja* and *bangku*, for example, are derived from Portuguese; *buka* and *laci* from Dutch; *pen*, *pensel*, *mancis*, *basikal* and *siling* from English; *kerusi*, *kamus*, *surat*,

*majalah* and *suratkhobar* from Arabic; *jam* and *katil* from Persian and Tamil respectively.

Whenever you come across a new Bahasa Melayu word, see whether you can tell its origin.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*anjing*, dog

*basikal*, bicycle

*gajah*, elephant

*kucing*, cat

*kuda*, horse

*lembu*, cow

*motokar*, motorcar

*rumah*, house

*sekolah*, school

*wang*, money

## Personal Pronouns

The use of Personal Pronouns in Bahasa Melayu (particularly the first and the second persons) is a tricky business. You will be surprised to know that there is more than a dozen words, in current use, for the first person singular, alone! In English, you have only two words: *I* and *me*.

However, this should not discourage you for, at this stage, you are required to learn only certain Personal Pronouns that are given below:

<i>saya</i>	I, me
<i>awak</i>	you
<i>dia, ia</i>	he, him she, her it
<i>kita</i> <i>kami</i>	we, us
<i>mereka</i>	they, them

Here is a short note on the use of the above Personal Pronouns:



The word *saya* is a polite form that conveys the meaning of *I*. It can be used when talking to your friends, parents, teachers and those who are superior to you. It is also a suitable term to use when interacting with those lower in status, such as gardeners, labourers and children.

The word *awak* is supposed to be the counterpart of *saya* but it is not perfectly so. You must not use *awak* when talking to persons who are superior to you, such as your parents, teachers or boss. They will be shocked! You can use *awak* among your equals, and people lower in status and age.

For the English word *we*, there are two words in Bahasa Melayu, and there is a difference between the two. *Kita* is used when the person you are speaking to is included, whereas *kami* does not include the person whom you are talking to.

*Dia* and *ia* are sometimes interchangeably used, but *dia* gives more emphasis. Some writers reserve the word *dia* for human beings and animals, that is, animate objects.

Though there are alternatives for *mereka*, such words are used only in conversation, not in writing.

You should be pleased to learn that the Personal Pronouns in the above list are used both as a Subject as well as an Object except *ia*. *Ia* is only used as a Subject.

**Note:** *Nya* is a Personal Pronoun which can be used only as an Object. It carries the meaning *he, she or it*. *Nya* is always attached to the previous word, i.e. the word before it.

## The Verb-to-have—*ada*

One of the functions of the English *verb-to-have* is to show possession. In Bahasa Melayu, possession is expressed by the word *ada*.

*Saya ada anjing.*

I have a dog.

*Dia ada wang.*

He (She) has money.

*Mereka ada lembu.*

They have cows.

*Awak ada rumah.*

You have a house.

*Kami ada basikal.*

We have bicycles.

*Kita ada kucing, dia ada arnab.*

We have cats, she has a rabbit.

## Conversation

*Awak ada apa?*

*Saya ada basikal.*

*Dia ada apa?*

*Dia ada arnab.*

*Ah Leng ada apa?*

*Ah Leng ada anjing.*

*Jasman ada apa?*

*Jasman ada kucing.*

*Hashim ada apa?*

*Hashim ada kuda.*

*Krishnan ada apa?*

*Krishnan ada lembu.*

*Kita ada apa?  
Kita ada sekolah.*

*Mereka ada apa?  
Mereka ada motokar.*

### Exercise

You will find three columns of Bahasa Melayu words in the table below. Take words from Column 1, Column 2 and Column 3 and form sentences with them.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<i>Saya</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>komputer.</i>
<i>Awak</i>		<i>modem.</i>
<i>Dia</i>		<i>kucing.</i>
		<i>wang.</i>
<i>Ramli</i>		<i>rumah.</i>
		<i>lembu.</i>
<i>Kami</i>		<i>gambar.</i>
		<i>kerusi.</i>
<i>Kita</i>	<i>lampu.</i>	
	<i>pisau.</i>	
<i>Mereka</i>	<i>arnab.</i>	
	<i>mancis.</i>	
	<i>katil.</i>	
		<i>ubat.</i>
		<i>motokar.</i>
		<i>kuda.</i>
		<i>basikal.</i>

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. I have an aquarium.
2. The rich man has a bungalow.
3. Zainab has a cat.
4. This school has a laser printer.
5. They have an elephant.

6. She has a magazine.
7. Ah Leng has a handphone.
8. That college has a swimming pool.
9. He has a dictionary.
10. Tables have drawers.
11. He has a computer.
12. I have a modem.
13. We have a rubber estate.
14. You have an envelope.
15. Ramli has a calculator.

Now check your answers with the correct translation below:

1. *Saya ada akuarium.*
2. *Orang kaya itu ada banglo.*
3. *Zainab ada kucing.*
4. *Sekolah ini ada pencetak laser.*
5. *Mereka ada gajah.*
7. *Ah Leng ada telefon bimbit.*
8. *Maktab itu ada kolam renang.*
9. *Dia ada kamus.*
10. *Meja ada laci.*
11. *Dia ada komputer.*
12. *Saya ada modem.*
13. *Kami ada ladang getah.*
14. *Awak ada sampul surat.*
15. *Ramli ada kalkulator.*

## LESSON 5

### VERBS

#### (Verb-to-have—Negative—tidak ada)

In the previous lesson, you have learnt that the verb-to-have is expressed as *ada*. The negative form is *tidak ada*, and it is often abbreviated to *tak ada*, particularly in conversation.

*Saya tidak ada motokar.*

I haven't any car.

*Awak tidak ada lembu.*

You haven't any cow.

*Dia tidak ada rokok.*

He hasn't any cigarette.

*Dia tidak ada pisau.*

He (She) hasn't any knife.

*Kami tidak ada wang.*

We haven't any money.

*Mereka tidak ada pensel.*

They haven't any pencil.

*Zainab tidak ada jam tangan.*

Zainab hasn't any watch.

### Words to Remember

#### Nouns

*kemeja*, shirt

*kemudahan*, facilities

*sapu tangan*, handkerchief

*selimut*, blanket

*stoking*, stockings, socks  
*topi*, hat  
*kondominium*, condominium  
*payung*, umbrella

*tali pinggang*, belt  
*songkok*, Malay cap  
*sikat*, comb  
*kot*, coat

## Conjunctions

*atau*, or  
*tetapi*, but

*dan*, and

## Exercise

For practice, combine the words in the table below in different ways to form as many sentences as you can. Just be sure to use words from each of the three columns in every sentence you form.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<i>Saya</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>selimut.</i>
<i>Awak</i>		<i>sikat.</i>
<i>Dia</i>		<i>sapu tangan.</i>
<i>Kami</i>	<i>tidak ada</i>	<i>payung.</i>
<i>Mereka</i>		<i>kemeja.</i>
<i>Hashim</i>		<i>stoking.</i>
		<i>rumah.</i>
		<i>baju hujan.</i>
		<i>berus.</i>
		<i>tali pinggang.</i>
		<i>topi.</i>
		<i>katil.</i>
		<i>kamus.</i>
		<i>majalah.</i>

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. That institute of higher learning hasn't any specific courses.
2. That campus hasn't any transport facilities.
3. Kampung Semenyih hasn't any electricity and water facilities.
4. The Smart School has computers.
5. That millionaire has two condominiums.
6. I haven't any dogs or cats.
7. They haven't any handkerchiefs.
8. Amir hasn't any stockings or shoes.
9. He hasn't any coat, but he has a shirt.
10. You haven't any belt, but you have a handkerchief.

Now check your answers with the correct translation below:

1. *Institut pengajian tinggi itu tidak ada kursus tertentu.*
2. *Kampus itu tidak ada kemudahan pengangkutan.*
3. *Kampung Semenyih tidak ada kemudahan elektrik dan air .*
4. *Sekolah Bistari ada komputer.*
5. *Jutawan itu ada dua buah kondominium.*
6. *Saya tidak ada anjing atau kucing.*
7. *Mereka tidak ada sapu tangan.*
8. *Amir tidak ada stoking atau kasut.*
9. *Dia tidak ada kot, tetapi dia ada kemeja.*
10. *Awak tidak ada tali pinggang, tetapi awak ada sapu tangan.*

## LESSON 6

### VERBS

#### (Verb-to-have—Interrogatives)

You have learnt in Lesson 3 that the interrogative form of the verb-to-have may be obtained by inflection, that is, by raising the voice or by placing the particle *kah* after a word in a declarative sentence.

The interrogative form of the verb-to-have may similarly be formed. The interrogative sentence, *Have you a house?* for example, may be rendered:

*Awak ada rumah?* or  
*Awak ada rumahkah?* or  
*Awak adakah rumah?*

The particle *kah* may also be affixed to *awak*, thus:

*Awakkah ada rumah?*

This construction, however, will convey a slightly different meaning. It means: *Is it you that has a house?* The answer to this would be: *Ya, saya.* (Yes, it's I.) But the answer to the first three questions would be: *Ada* or *Saya ada.* (I have.)



## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*drebar*, driver

*doktor*, doctor

*guru*, teacher

*jurnal*, journal

*kerani*, clerk

*kuali*, pan

*skuasy*, squash

*majalah*, magazine

*murid*, pupil

*telefon bimbit*, handphone

*orang gaji*, servant

*peladang*, farmer

*penuntut*, student

*polis*, policeman

*pencetak laser*, laser printer

*tukang masak*, cook

### Conversation

*Awak ada topi?*

*Ya, saya ada topi.*

*Awak adakah payung?*

*Ya, saya ada payung.*

*Siapa ada ubat?*

*Doktor ada ubat.*

*Awak ada baju hujan?*

*Tak ada, saya tak ada baju hujan.*

*Siapa ada kuali?*

*Tukang masak ada kuali.*

*Siti ada apa?*

*Siti ada raket skuasy.*

*Siapa ada kamus?*

*Guru ada kamus.*

*Siapa ada pen dan pensel?*

*Kami ada pen dan pensel.*

*Siapa ada buku?*

*Ya, murid-murid ada buku.*

*Zainab ada majalahkah?*

*Tak ada, Zainab tak ada majalah, tetapi dia ada jurnal.*

*Ah Leng ada telefon bimbitkah?*

*Ya, Ah Leng ada telefon bimbit.*

*Ah Leng ada mesin taipkah atau komputer?*

*Ah Leng ada mesin taip, tetapi dia tak ada komputer.*

*Johari adakah komputer dan modem?*

*Johari ada komputer, tetapi dia tak ada modem.*

*Hassan adakah disket dan pencetak laser?*

*Hassan tak ada disket atau pencetak laser.*

### Exercise

Combine the words in the three columns below to form as many meaningful sentences in the interrogative form as you can.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<i>Doktor</i>	<i>adakah</i>	<i>selimut?</i>
<i>Guru</i>		<i>sikat?</i>
<i>Kerani</i>		<i>sapu tangan?</i>
<i>Polis</i>		<i>kuali?</i>
<i>Murid</i>		<i>kamus?</i>
<i>Peladang</i>		<i>meja?</i>
<i>Penuntut</i>		<i>loceng?</i>
<i>Tukang gunting</i>		<i>kipas?</i>
<i>Tukang jahit</i>		<i>pisau?</i>
<i>Tukang kayu</i>		<i>ubat?</i>
<i>Tukang masak</i>		<i>basikal?</i>
<i>Awak</i>		<i>rumah?</i>
		<i>motokar?</i>
	<i>lembu?</i>	
	<i>kuda?</i>	
	<i>surat?</i>	

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after the exercise:

1. Have you a clerk?
2. Has the policeman a bicycle?
3. Has the student a dictionary?
4. Have you a driver?
5. Has he a cook?
6. Has the doctor a handphone?
7. Have the farmer and the tailor bicycles?
8. Have you a servant?
9. Has she a pan?
10. Has the bicycle a lamp?
11. Have you a ruler?
12. Has she money?
13. Have you a newspaper?
14. Has she an umbrella?
15. Have they a motorcar?

Now check your answers with the correct translation below:

1. *Awak adakah kerani?*
2. *Polis adakah basikal?*
3. *Penuntut adakah kamus?*
4. *Awak adakah drebar?*
5. *Dia adakah tukang masak?*
6. *Doktor adakah telefon bimbit?*
7. *Peladang dan tukang jahit adakah basikal?*
8. *Awak adakah orang gaji?*
9. *Dia adakah kualiti?*
10. *Basikal adakah lampu?*
11. *Awak adakah pembaris?*
12. *Dia adakah wang?*
13. *Awak adakah suratkhobar?*

14. *Dia adakah payung?*
15. *Mereka adakah motokar?*

## LESSON 7

### NUMERALS (Cardinal Numbers)

Numbers in Bahasa Melayu are expressed as follows:

1	<i>satu</i>	11	<i>sebelas</i>
2	<i>dua</i>	12	<i>dua belas</i>
3	<i>tiga</i>	13	<i>tiga belas</i>
4	<i>empat</i>	14	<i>empat belas</i>
5	<i>lima</i>	15	<i>lima belas</i>
6	<i>enam</i>	16	<i>enam belas</i>
7	<i>tujuh</i>	17	<i>tujuh belas</i>
8	<i>lapan</i>	18	<i>lapan belas</i>
9	<i>sembilan</i>	19	<i>sembilan belas</i>
10	<i>sepuluh</i>	20	<i>dua puluh</i>

You will see that the word *belas* is attached to the units from 11 to 19. It is equivalent to the English *teen*. The word *se* in *sebelas* is abbreviated from *satu*. Though *se* and *satu* are interchangeable in most cases, *satu belas* is never used.

Zero (0) is expressed as *kosong*.

The word *and* in the English expression *Five hundred and twenty seven* is not rendered in Bahasa Melayu.

20	<i>dua puluh</i>	59	<i>lima puluh sembilan</i>
30	<i>tiga puluh</i>	68	<i>enam puluh lapan</i>
40	<i>empat puluh</i>	71	<i>tujuh puluh satu</i>
50	<i>lima puluh</i>	82	<i>lapan puluh dua</i>
60	<i>enam puluh</i>	94	<i>sembilan puluh empat</i>
70	<i>tujuh puluh</i>	47	<i>empat puluh tujuh</i>
80	<i>lapan puluh</i>	26	<i>dua puluh enam</i>
90	<i>sembilan puluh</i>	35	<i>tiga puluh lima</i>
100	<i>seratus</i>	603	<i>enam ratus tiga</i>
527	<i>lima ratus dua puluh tujuh</i>	1000	<i>seribu</i>
		3548	<i>tiga ribu lima ratus empat puluh lapan</i>

### Exercise

A. Write the following numbers in Bahasa Melayu.

1. 39 \_\_\_\_\_
2. 74 \_\_\_\_\_
3. 51 \_\_\_\_\_
4. 82 \_\_\_\_\_
5. 63 \_\_\_\_\_
6. 432 \_\_\_\_\_
7. 259 \_\_\_\_\_
8. 713 \_\_\_\_\_
9. 395 \_\_\_\_\_
10. 1960 \_\_\_\_\_

B. Write the following words in figures:

1. *Dua puluh lima*
2. *Empat puluh lapan*
3. *Tujuh puluh sembilan*
4. *Dua ratus enam puluh tiga*
5. *Lima ratus empat puluh tujuh*
6. *Enam ratus lapan puluh satu*

7. *Tiga ratus sembilan puluh empat*
8. *Tujuh ratus sembilan puluh*
9. *Dua ribu tiga ratus empat puluh lima*
10. *Empat ribu sebelas*

Now check your answers with the correct answers below:

A.

1. *tiga puluh sembilan*
2. *tujuh puluh empat*
3. *lima puluh satu*
4. *lapan puluh dua*
5. *enam puluh tiga*
6. *empat ratus tiga puluh dua*
7. *dua ratus lima puluh sembilan*
8. *tujuh ratus tiga belas*
9. *tiga ratus sembilan puluh lima*
10. *seribu sembilan ratus enam puluh*

B.

1. 25
2. 48
3. 79
4. 263
5. 547
6. 681
7. 394
8. 790
9. 2345
10. 4011

## **Fractions and Decimal Points**

Fractions are expressed as follows:

one quarter ( $1/4$ )	<i>suku</i>
half ( $1/2$ )	<i>setengah</i>
three-quarter ( $3/4$ )	<i>tiga suku</i>
one-third ( $1/3$ )	<i>satu pertiga</i>
two-third ( $2/3$ )	<i>dua pertiga</i>
three-fifth ( $3/5$ )	<i>tiga perlima</i>
four-seventh ( $4/7$ )	<i>empat pertujuh</i>
six-fifteenth ( $6/15$ )	<i>enam perlima belas</i>

Decimal point is expressed as *perpuluhan* (i.e. persepuluh):

2.3	<i>dua perpuluhan tiga.</i>
7.25	<i>tujuh perpuluhan dua lima</i>
16.014	<i>enam belas perpuluhan kosong satu empat</i>

Percent (%) is expressed as *peratus* (i.e. perseratus):

5%	<i>lima peratus</i>
35%	<i>tiga puluh lima peratus</i>
12 $1/2$ %	<i>dua belas setengah peratus</i>



## LESSON 8

### CLASSIFIERS

(Orang; Ekor; Batang; Buah; Biji)

When counting objects, we have to use a class of words which we call *Penjodoh Bilangan*. It is called Classifiers in English. For example, the Classifier *keping* corresponds to the English *sheet*, in the expression of *four sheets of paper, etc.*

There are many Classifiers in Bahasa Melayu, but the most commonly used ones number just about a dozen. We shall, however, learn a few at a time, in order of their importance.

Below is given the first set of the most commonly used Classifiers, and the objects each takes:

1. *Orang* (meaning person) is used when we count human beings.

<i>tiga orang polis</i>	three policemen
<i>sepuluh orang penuntut</i>	ten students
<i>enam orang tukang masak</i>	six cooks

2. *Ekor* (meaning tail) is used when we count animals, birds, fish, insects, etc.

<i>lima ekor kambing</i>	five goats
<i>sepuluh ekor itik</i>	ten ducks

<i>empat ekor ikan</i>	four fish
<i>seekor nyamuk</i>	a mosquito

3. *Batang* is used to count rod-like objects such as poles, cigarettes, pens, pencils, etc.

<i>dua batang pen</i>	two pens
<i>lima batang pensel</i>	five pencils
<i>dua puluh batang rokok</i>	twenty cigarettes

4. *Buah* (meaning fruit) is used when we count objects which are usually large or cubical in appearance such as countries, buildings, rivers, ships, vehicles, furniture, rooms, islands, books, computers, etc.

<i>sebuah pulau</i>	an island
<i>dua buah kerusi</i>	two chairs
<i>tiga buah rumah</i>	three houses
<i>enam buah motokar</i>	six cars
<i>sepuluh buah komputer</i>	ten computers

5. *Biji* (meaning seed) is used when we count spherical objects such as cups, fruits, eggs, eyes, etc.

<i>lima biji kelapa</i>	five coconuts
<i>empat biji cawan</i>	four cups
<i>sembilan biji telur</i>	nine eggs

**Note:** When attached to a Classifier, the word *satu* is always contracted to *se*.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*ayam*, fowl, chicken  
*bilik*, room  
*burung*, bird  
*cawan*, cup  
*harimau*, tiger  
*ikan*, fish  
*itik*, duck  
*kambing*, goat  
*kapal*, ship  
*pembaris*, ruler

*mangga*, mango  
*negeri*, country  
*nanas*, pineapple  
*nyamuk*, mosquito  
*pisang*, banana  
*pulau*, island  
*basikal*, bicycle  
*telur*, egg  
*kelapa*, coconut

### Adverbs

*berapa*, how many

*sahaja*, only

## Conversation

*Awak ada ayam?*  
*Ya, saya ada ayam.*

*Awak ada berapa ekor ayam?*  
*Saya ada lapan ekor ayam.*

*Awak ada itik?*  
*Ya, saya ada itik.*

*Ada berapa ekor?*  
*Ada sepuluh ekor.*

*Siapa ada ikan?*  
*Tukang masak ada ikan.*

*Ada berapa ekor?*  
*Ada dua ekor.*

*Leela adakah pisang dan nanas?  
Leela ada pisang tetapi dia tak ada nanas.*

*Ada berapa biji?  
Ada enam biji.*

*Seorang guru ada berapa orang murid?  
Seorang guru ada tiga puluh orang murid.*

*Seorang murid ada berapa buah buku?  
Seorang murid ada tujuh buah buku.*

*Awak ada pembaris?  
Ya, saya ada .*

*Awak ada sepuluh batang pembaris?  
Tak ada, saya ada lima batang pembaris.*

*Awak ada berapa batang pen?  
Saya ada sebatang pen sahaja.*

## Exercise

Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the correct Classifiers:

1. *Ah Leng ada se \_\_\_\_\_ basikal.*
2. *Kami ada sepuluh \_\_\_\_\_ telur.*
3. *Leela ada tiga \_\_\_\_\_ pensel.*
4. *Dia ada lima \_\_\_\_\_ kelapa.*
5. *Mereka ada se \_\_\_\_\_ guru.*
6. *Sebuah rumah ada tiga \_\_\_\_\_ bilik.*
7. *Kami tidak ada itik, tetapi ada lima \_\_\_\_\_ ayam.*
8. *Awak ada dua \_\_\_\_\_ rokok.*
9. *Hashim ada se \_\_\_\_\_ kamus.*
10. *Seorang guru ada tiga puluh \_\_\_\_\_ murid.*
11. *Saya ada se \_\_\_\_\_ epal sahaja.*

12. *Ahmad ada se \_\_\_\_\_ pen.*
13. *Mereka ada dua \_\_\_\_\_ motokar.*
14. *Kami ada se \_\_\_\_\_ tukang masak.*
15. *Mutu ada sepuluh \_\_\_\_\_ kambing.*

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. She has three pineapples.
2. You have two pencils.
3. They have twenty goats.
4. A teacher has forty pupils.
5. He has two rulers only.
6. I have no pen, but I have two pencils.
7. We have no money, but we have a car.
8. There are two tables in a room.
9. Ahmad has two dictionaries.
10. We have six mangoes and three fish.

Now check your answers with the correct translation below:

1. *Dia ada tiga biji nanas.*
2. *Awak ada dua batang pensel.*
3. *Mereka ada dua puluh ekor kambing.*
4. *Seorang guru ada empat puluh orang murid.*
5. *Dia ada dua batang pembaris sahaja.*
6. *Saya tidak ada pen, tetapi saya ada dua batang pensel.*
7. *Kami tidak ada wang, tetapi kami ada sebuah motokar.*
8. *Sebuah bilik ada dua buah meja.*
9. *Ahmad ada dua buah kamus.*
10. *Kami ada enam biji mangga dan tiga ekor ikan.*

## LESSON 9

### ADJECTIVES

#### (Qualitative and Demonstrative)

In English, Qualitative Adjectives *precede* the Nouns; in Bahasa Melayu such Adjectives *follow* the Nouns they qualify, as in the following examples:

<i>orang muda</i>	a <b>young</b> man
<i>sekolah besar</i>	a <b>large</b> school
<i>gambar cantik</i>	a <b>beautiful</b> picture
<i>bilik bersih</i>	a <b>clean</b> room
<i>ayat panjang</i>	a <b>long</b> sentence

Demonstrative Adjectives also follow the Nouns they qualify. Some examples are:

<i>buku ini</i>	<b>this</b> book
<i>laci itu</i>	<b>that</b> drawer
<i>gambar-gambar ini</i>	<b>these</b> pictures
<i>majalah-majalah itu</i>	<b>those</b> magazines

If both Qualitative Adjectives and Demonstrative Adjectives are used successively, the Demonstrative Adjectives follow the Qualitative Adjectives. Some examples are:

<i>buku tebal ini</i>	this <b>thick</b> book
-----------------------	------------------------

<i>laci besar itu</i>	that <b>big</b> drawer
<i>gambar-gambar</i>	
<i>cantik ini</i>	these <b>beautiful</b> pictures
<i>majalah-majalah</i>	
<i>lama itu</i>	those <b>old</b> magazines

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

<i>anggur</i> , grapes	<i>buah</i> , fruit
<i>ayat</i> , sentence	<i>pagar</i> , fence
<i>bahasa</i> , language	<i>pelajaran</i> , lesson
<i>bandar</i> , city	

### Adjectives

<i>tebal</i> , thick	<i>nipis</i> , thin
<i>bersih</i> , clean	<i>panas</i> , hot
<i>besar</i> , large, big	<i>panjang</i> , long
<i>cantik</i> , beautiful	<i>muda</i> , young
<i>gemuk</i> , fat	<i>senang</i> , easy
<i>kecil</i> , small	<i>tebal</i> , thick
<i>kurus</i> , thin	<i>tinggi</i> , tall, high

### Miscellaneous

<i>sangat</i> , very	<i>tidak berapa</i> , not so
----------------------	------------------------------

Bahasa Melayu Adjectives are also used predicatively in the same way as they are used in English, that is to say, they are placed at the end of sentences. Examples:

<i>Pelajaran ini senang.</i>	This lesson is <b>easy</b> .
<i>Motokar itu besar.</i>	That car is <b>big</b> .
<i>Buah-buah ini besar.</i>	These fruits are <b>large</b> .

<i>Sapu tangan-sapu tangan itu bersih.</i>	Those handkerchiefs are <b>clean</b> .
<i>Pokok-pokok kelapa itu tinggi.</i>	Those coconut trees are <b>tall</b> .
<i>Bandaraya Kuala Lumpur sangat sibuk.</i>	Kuala Lumpur city is very <b>busy</b> .
<i>Bilik ini tidak berapa bersih.</i>	This room is not so <b>clean</b> .
<i>Bunga ini sangat cantik.</i>	This flower is very <b>beautiful</b> .

For the purpose of emphasis, an Adjective may be placed before the Noun. The suffix *nya* may be added further to make it more emphatic. Examples:

<i>Hari ini panas.</i>	}	It's a hot day.
<i>Panas hari ini!</i>		How hot it is today!
<i>Panasnya hari ini!</i>		
<i>Makanan ini sedap.</i>	}	This food is delicious.
<i>Sedap makanan ini!</i>		How delicious this food is!
<i>Sedapnya makanan ini!</i>		
<i>Buah anggur itu manis.</i>	}	The grapes are sweet.
<i>Manis buah anggur ini!</i>		How sweet the grapes are!
<i>Manisnya buah anggur itu!</i>		
<i>Burung ini cantik.</i>	}	This bird is pretty.
<i>Cantik burung itu!</i>		How pretty the bird is!
<i>Cantiknya burung itu!</i>		
<i>Majalah ini tebal.</i>	}	This magazine is thick.
<i>Tebal majalah ini!</i>		How thick this magazine is!
<i>Tebalnya majalah ini!</i>		



## Conversation

*Doktor itu mudakah?*

*Ya, doktor itu muda.*

*Doktor itu gemukkah?*

*Tidak, doktor itu tidak gemuk.*

*Pencetak laser itu mahalkah?*

*Ya, pencetak laser itu mahal.*

*Gunung Everest tinggikah?*

*Ya, Gunung Everest tinggi.*

*Stadium Nasional Bukit Jalil canggihkah?*

*Ya, Stadium Nasional Bukit Jalil canggih.*

*KLIA besarkah?*

*Ya, KLIA besar.*

*Pasukan badminton Malaysia kuatkah?*

*Ya, pasukan badminton Malaysia sangat kuat.*

*Polis itu kuruskah?*

*Tidak, polis itu tidak kurus.*

*Motokar itu besarkah?*

*Ya, motokar itu besar.*

*Ular itu panjangkah?*

*Ya, ular itu panjang.*

*Cakera padat video itu barukah?*

*Ya, cakera padat video itu baru.*

*Buku rujukan itu tebalkah?*

*Tidak, buku rujukan itu tidak berapa tebal.*

*Kereta empat pacuan Kembara Perodua besarkah?*

*Tidak, kereta empat pacuan Kembara Perodua tidak berapa besar.*

*Negeri ini panaskah?*

*Ya, negeri ini panas.*

*Bilik komputer ini panaskah?*

*Tidak, bilik komputer ini tidak berapa panas.*

*Bandaraya Kuala Lumpur bersihkah?*

*Ya, bandaraya Kuala Lumpur sangat bersih.*

### Exercise

Combine the words in the three columns below to form as many meaningful sentences as you can. Just be sure to use words from each of the three columns in every sentence you form.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<i>Kamus</i>	<i>itu</i>	<i>tebal.</i>
<i>Mangga</i>		<i>cantik.</i>
<i>Pulau</i>		<i>muda.</i>
<i>Kapal</i>		<i>baru.</i>
<i>Bilik</i>		<i>panas.</i>
<i>Sungai</i>		<i>panjang.</i>
<i>Bangku</i>		<i>sangat besar.</i>
<i>Kerani</i>		<i>tidak berapa bersih.</i>

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. This apartment is beautiful.
2. Malaysia is a beautiful country.
3. That calculator is new.
4. My sister has a new Proton Perdana.
5. Tokyo is a large city.

6. She hasn't any clean handkerchief.
7. The Kuala Lumpur Twin Towers are sophisticated.
8. You have an old bicycle.
9. We have long benches.
10. Are those fruits clean?
11. Do you have black shoes?
12. That condominium is very beautiful.
13. The doctor has a red car and a big house.
14. This new lesson is not so easy.
15. Julia has a new compact disc player.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Pangsapuri ini cantik.*
2. *Malaysia negara cantik.*
3. *Kalkulator itu baru.*
4. *Kakak saya ada sebuah Proton Perdana.*
5. *Tokyo bandar besar.*
6. *Dia tidak ada sapu tangan bersih.*
7. *Menara Kembar Kuala Lumpur canggih.*
8. *Awak ada basikal lama.*
9. *Kami ada bangku panjang.*
10. *Buah-buah itu bersihkah?*
11. *Awak ada kasut hitamkah?*
12. *Kondominium itu sangat cantik.*
13. *Doktor itu ada motokar merah dan rumah besar.*
14. *Pelajaran baru ini bukan mudah.*
15. *Julia ada sebuah alat main cakera padat baru.*

## LESSON 10

### ADJECTIVES (Adjectives of Number)

If an Adjective of Number is used in a sentence, the number is placed before the Noun. If a Classifier is also required, the Classifier follows the number. Examples:

#### 1. Without Classifiers:

<i>tiga ringgit</i>	three ringgit
<i>sepuluh sen</i>	ten sen
<i>dua jam</i>	two hours
<i>empat hari</i>	four days

#### 2. With Classifiers:

<i>tiga ekor kambing</i>	three goats
<i>dua buah motokar</i>	two cars
<i>enam batang tiang</i>	six poles
<i>empat ekor rama-rama</i>	four butterflies

#### Examples in sentences:

<i>Ahmad ada lima ringgit.</i>	Ahmad has five ringgit.
<i>Seorang budak ada lima puluh sen.</i>	One boy has fifty sen.

<i>Dia ada sepuluh kilo ubi kentang.</i>	He has ten kilo of potatoes.
<i>Kami ada dua puluh buah buku.</i>	We have twenty books.
<i>Wati ada dua ekor kucing.</i>	Wati has two cats.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

<i>tiang, poles</i>	<i>kilo, kilo</i>
<i>coklat, chocolate</i>	<i>kotak, box</i>
<i>gelas, glass ( the tumbler)</i>	<i>minyak, oil</i>
<i>liter, litre</i>	<i>ratus, hundred</i>
<i>harga, price</i>	<i>ribu, thousand</i>
<i>harganya, its price</i>	<i>berapa harga, how much</i>
<i>ubi kentang, potatoes</i>	<i>tongkat, walking-stick</i>
<i>kapur, chalk</i>	<i>projektor, projector</i>

## Conversation

*Berapa harga sebuah komputer?*

*Harga sebuah komputer tiga ribu ringgit.*

*Berapa harga sepuluh batang rokok?*

*Harga sepuluh batang rokok dua ringgit lima puluh sen.*

*Berapa harga sebuah kamera digital?*

*Harga sebuah kamera digital dua ribu ringgit.*

*Berapa harga sebuah motokar?*

*Harga sebuah motokar empat puluh ribu ringgit.*

*Berapa harga seliter minyak?*

*Seliter minyak harganya tiga ringgit lima puluh sen.*

*Berapa harga segelas air tebu?*

*Segelas air tebu harganya satu ringgit.*

*Berapa harga sekotak mancis?*

*Sekotak mancis harganya satu ringgit.*

*Berapa harga suratkhobar ini?*

*Suratkhobar ini harganya satu ringgit.*

*Berapa harga majalah ini?*

*Majalah ini harganya empat ringgit lima puluh sen.*

*Berapa harga sekotak coklat?*

*Sekotak coklat harganya tiga ringgit lapan puluh sen.*

*Berapa harga seekor burung ini?*

*Seekor burung ini harganya dua belas ringgit.*

*Berapa harga sebuah kamus Melayu?*

*Sebuah kamus Melayu harganya dua puluh lima ringgit.*

*Berapa harga sebatang tongkat?*

*Sebatang tongkat harganya sembilan ringgit.*

## **Exercise**

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. The National Sports Complex has four thousand seats.
2. The Smart School has two hundred computers.
3. Salim's house has a swimming pool.
4. My office has a laser printer.
5. Our teacher has three boxes of chalk.
6. That car has a CD player.
7. You have three large fish.
8. That school has two halls.

9. I have no umbrella, but I have a raincoat and a hat.
10. One farmer has twelve cows and thirty goats.
11. The resource room has a projector.
12. What is the price of that picture?
13. What is the price of this magazine?
14. How many pens have you?
15. How many pupils has she?

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Kompleks Sukan Negara ada empat ribu tempat duduk.*
2. *Sekolah Bistari itu ada dua ratus komputer.*
3. *Rumah Salim ada sebuah kolam renang.*
4. *Pejabat saya ada sebuah pencetak laser.*
5. *Guru kami ada tiga kotak kapur.*
6. *Motokar itu ada sebuah alat main CD.*
7. *Awak ada tiga ekor ikan besar.*
8. *Sekolah itu ada dua buah dewan.*
9. *Saya tidak ada payung, tetapi saya ada baju hujan dan topi.*
10. *Seorang peladang ada dua belas ekor lembu dan tiga puluh ekor kambing.*
11. *Bilik pusat sumber ada sebuah projektor.*
12. *Berapa harga gambar itu?*
13. *Berapa harga majalah ini?*
14. *Awak ada berapa batang pen?*
15. *Dia ada berapa orang murid?*

# LESSON 11

## GENDER

## NUMBERS

### (Ordinal Numbers)

When we use words denoting persons or animals, we generally use them in the Common Gender. For example, the English sentence: *That is my son*, would be expressed: *Itu anak saya*. (That is my child). Similarly, the sentence: *Those girls are industrious* is expressed as *Budak-budak itu rajin*. (Those children are industrious).

However, if the sex is to be determined, it is done by placing the words *lelaki* (meaning male) and *perempuan* (meaning female) to most Nouns denoting persons. For animals, *jantan* and *betina* are used respectively.

Examples of Nouns denoting persons:

*budak perempuan*, girl

*orang perempuan*, woman

*pelayan perempuan*, waitress

*murid perempuan*, female pupil

*doktor perempuan*, female

doctor

*budak lelaki*, boy

*orang lelaki*, man

*pelayan lelaki*, waiter

*murid lelaki*, male pupil

*doktor lelaki*, male doctor



Examples of Nouns denoting animals:

<i>ayam jantan</i> , cock	<i>ayam betina</i> , hen
<i>lembu jantan</i> , bull	<i>lembu betina</i> , cow
<i>singa jantan</i> , lion	<i>singa betina</i> , lioness
<i>harimau jantan</i> , tiger	<i>harimau betina</i> , tigress
<i>gajah jantan</i> , bull elephant	<i>gajah betina</i> , cow elephant

There are, however, a few words which have specified forms for Masculine and Feminine. Among those few are:

<i>seniman</i> , actor	<i>seniwati</i> , actress
<i>maharaja</i> , emperor	<i>maharani</i> , empress
<i>putera</i> , prince	<i>puteri</i> , princess
<i>biduan</i> , songster	<i>biduanita</i> , songstress
<i>ustaz</i> , male Muslim religious teacher	<i>ustazah</i> , female Muslim religious teacher

It should be noted that the describing words *lelaki*, *perempuan*, *jantan* and *betina* should be used only when the sex has to be determined. Observe the following examples:

**Orang ini tukang masak.**

This **man** (or **woman**) is a cook.

**Budak lelaki ada rama-rama, budak perempuan ada coklat.**

The **boys** have butterflies, the **girls** have chocolates.

**Gopal ada lima ekor lembu.**

Gopal has five **cows**.

**Ayam jantan dua ekor itu cantik.**

Those two **cocks** are beautiful.

## Ordinal Numbers

Ordinals in Bahasa Melayu are expressed as follows:

*yang pertama*, first  
*yang kedua*, second  
*yang ketiga*, third  
*yang keempat*, fourth  
*yang kelima*, fifth

*yang keenam*, sixth  
*yang ketujuh*, seventh  
*yang kelapan*, eighth  
*yang kesembilan*, ninth  
*yang kesepuluh*, tenth

You will notice that with the exception of *first* (*yang pertama*), the rest are formed by placing the word *yang* and prefixing *ke* immediately before the numeral. A Noun, when used, comes before the Ordinals.

*murid yang pertama*  
*bilik yang ketiga*  
*hari yang keempat*  
*rumah yang kelima*  
*pelajaran yang kelapan*  
*ayat yang kesepuluh*  
*budak yang kedua puluh*  
*perkataan yang kedua*

the first pupil  
the third room  
the fourth day  
the fifth house  
the eighth lesson  
the tenth sentence  
the twentieth boy/girl  
the second word

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*ayat*, sentence  
*bola*, ball  
*hari*, day  
*malam*, night

*muka surat*, page  
*perkataan*, word  
*pelajaran*, lesson

### Adjectives

*kotor*, dirty  
*mahal*, expensive  
*murah*, cheap

*pendek*, short  
*sejuk*, cold  
*susah*, difficult

## Conversation

*Bilik yang ke berapa mahal?*

*Bilik yang pertama mahal.*

*Bilik yang ke berapa murah?*

*Bilik yang kedua murah.*

*Ayat ini panjangkah?*

*Tidak, ayat ini tidak panjang; ayat yang kelima panjang.*

*Ayat yang ketiga panjang atau pendek?*

*Ayat yang ketiga pendek.*

*Hari yang ke berapa panas?*

*Hari yang kedua panas.*

*Malam yang ke berapa panas?*

*Malam yang keempat sejuk.*

*Rumah yang ketiga itu berapa harganya?*

*Rumah yang ketiga itu harganya lapan puluh ribu ringgit.*

*Ini pelajaran yang ke berapa?*

*Ini pelajaran yang kesebelas.*

*Pelajaran yang kesebelas panjang atau pendek?*

*Pelajaran yang kesebelas panjang.*

*Pelajaran yang kesembilan panjangkah?*

*Pelajaran yang kesembilan tidak berapa panjang.*

*Pelajaran yang kesebelas ini susahkah?*

*Tidak berapa susah.*

### Exercise

Combine the words in the three columns below to form as many meaningful sentences as you can. Just be sure to use words from each of the three columns in every sentence you form.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<i>Pulau</i>	<i>yang pertama</i>	<i>panjang.</i>
<i>Bilik</i>	<i>yang kedua</i>	<i>bersih.</i>
<i>Pelajaran</i>	<i>yang ketiga</i>	<i>kecil.</i>
<i>Tangga</i>	<i>yang keempat</i>	<i>tinggi.</i>
<i>Pokok</i>	<i>yang kelima</i>	<i>senang.</i>
<i>Budak</i>		<i>baru.</i>
<i>Lampu</i>		<i>cantik.</i>
<i>Bandar</i>		<i>kotor.</i>
<i>Kuda</i>		

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. Malaysia is the first Asian nation to host the Commonwealth Games.
2. The second day is hot.
3. The fourth lesson is very easy.
4. The second letter was long.
5. The third window is large.
6. Malaysia won the first gold medal from bowling.
7. The boxer was eliminated in the fourth round.
8. The sixth sentence is long.
9. Martina Hingis won her seventh tennis championship title last year.
10. The tenth night was cold.
11. The sixteenth Commonwealth Games was great.
12. The twentieth word is difficult.
13. The tenth page is torn.

14. Dr. Mahathir is the fourth Prime Minister of Malaysia.
15. Today is the fifteenth day of the month.

Now check the sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Malaysia merupakan negara Asia yang pertama yang menjadi tuan rumah untuk Sukan Komanwel.*
2. *Hari yang kedua panas.*
3. *Pelajaran yang keempat senang.*
4. *Surat yang kedua panjang.*
5. *Tingkap yang ketiga besar.*
6. *Malaysia memenangi pingat emas yang pertama dalam acara bowling.*
7. *Peninju itu dikalahkan dalam pusingan yang keempat.*
8. *Ayat yang keenam panjang.*
9. *Martina Hingis memenangi kejohanan tenis yang ketujuh tahun lepas.*
10. *Malam yang kesepuluh sejuk.*
11. *Sukan Komanwel yang keenam belas hebat.*
12. *Perkataan yang kedua puluh susah.*
13. *Muka surat yang kesepuluh koyak.*
14. *Dr. Mahathir ialah Perdana Menteri Malaysia yang keempat.*
15. *Hari ini ialah hari yang kelima belas bulan ini.*

### ADJECTIVES

#### (Possessive Adjectives)

Possessive Adjectives are formed simply by placing Personal Pronouns after the Nouns. Examples:

*nama saya*

**my** name

*kakak awak*

**your** (elder) sister

*basikal dia*

**his (her)** bicycle

*guru kami*

**our** teacher

*bahasa mereka*

**their** language

Examples in sentences:

*Guru kami ada motokar baru.*

Our teacher has a new car.

*Sapu tangan awak bersih.*

Your handkerchief is clean.

*Payung dia baru.*

His (Her) umbrella is new.

*Bapa dia gemuk, tetapi emak dia kurus.*

His (Her) father is fat, but his (her) mother is thin.

*Bahasa Inggeris tidak berapa susah.*

The English language is not so difficult.

*Negeri mereka panas, tetapi kadang-kadang sangat sejuk.*

Their country is hot, but sometimes it is very cold.

*Isteri dia guru.*

His wife is a teacher.

Besides using the word *ada* to indicate possession as explained in Lesson 4, it is also used to show presence or existence. Examples:

*Wang saya ada di dalam laci itu.*

My money is in that drawer.

*Di atas meja Mary ada disket.*

There are diskettes on Mary's table.

*Di bawah meja ada anjing.*

There is a dog under the table.

*Di dalam kelas kami ada tiga puluh orang pelajar.*

There are thirty students in our class.

*Di rumah saya ada dua buah televisyen.*

There are two televisions in my house.

The negative of *ada* is, of course, *tidak ada* (in speech contracted to *tak ada*). Examples:

*Bapa saya tidak ada di rumah.*

My father is not at home.

*Komputer dia tidak ada program "Windows 98".*

There is no "Windows 98" programme in his (her) computer.

*Di negara kita tidak ada salji.*

There is no snow in our country.

*Di atas meja kerani itu tidak ada mesin fax.*  
There is no fax machine on the clerk's table.

**Note:** It is a mistake to use *ada* with an Adjective, as shown in the following examples below:

*Orang itu ada gemuk.*  
*Rumah dia ada cantik.*  
*Pekan Ipoh ada besar.*

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*abang*, elder brother  
*adik*, younger brother  
*pakar*, specialist  
*almari*, cupboard  
*anak*, child (of one's own  
or used in intimate term)  
*son*; *anak lelaki*  
*bapa*, father  
*Cik*, Miss  
*salji*, snow  
*isteri*, wife  
*alat pandang dengar*,  
audio visual aids

*kakak*, elder sister  
*kanak-kanak*, children  
(general)  
*kawan*, friend  
*kerja*, work  
*mesin fax*, fax machine  
*nama*, name  
*televisyen*, television  
*emak*, mother  
*sekolah menengah*,  
secondary school  
*suami*, husband

### Adjectives

*basah*, wet  
*kaya*, rich

*miskin*, poor  
*yang sulung*, the eldest



## Miscellaneous

*di*, at

*di atas*, on

*di bawah*, under

*siapa*, who

*di rumah*, at home

*kadang-kadang*, sometimes

*sekarang*, now, at present

## Conversation

*Itu rumah siapa?*

*Itu rumah Encik Ibrahim.*

*Rumah itu besarkah?*

*Ya, rumah itu besar.*

*Di mana Encik Ibrahim sekarang?*

*Encik Ibrahim ada di rumah.*

*Encik Ibrahim ada isterikah?*

*Ya, Encik Ibrahim ada isteri.*

*Siapa nama isteri Encik Ibrahim?*

*Nama isteri Encik Ibrahim, Puan Kalsum.*

*Encik Ibrahim adakah anak?*

*Ya, Encik Ibrahim ada lima orang anak.*

*Berapa orang lelaki, berapa orang perempuan?*

*Dua orang lelaki, tiga orang perempuan.*

*Siapa nama anak Encik Ibrahim yang sulung?*

*Nama anak Encik Ibrahim yang sulung, Ramli.*

*Siapa nama adik-adik Ramli?*

*Nama adik-adik Ramli: Ramlah, Rosli, Rosnah dan Rohana.*

*Ramli adakah di rumah sekarang?*

*Ramli tidak ada di rumah sekarang.*

*Di mana dia?*

*Dia di Kuala Lumpur.*

*Dia seorang pelajarkah?*

*Ya, dia seorang pelajar sekolah menengah di Kuala Lumpur.*

*Apa kerja Encik Ibrahim?*

*Encik Ibrahim seorang peladang.*

*Encik Ibrahim orang kayakah atau miskin?*

*Encik Ibrahim bukan orang kaya, bukan orang miskin.*

*Encik Ibrahim ada motokarkah?*

*Encik Ibrahim tidak ada motokar, tetapi dia ada motosikal.*

*Di rumah Encik Ibrahim adakah televisyen?*

*Ya, di rumah Encik Ibrahim ada televisyen.*

*Di mana televisyen itu?*

*Televisyen itu ada di atas meja.*

### Exercise

Use the words in the four columns below to form as many meaningful sentences as you can. Just be sure to use words from each of the four columns in every sentence you form.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
<p><i>Di dalam</i> <i>Di bawah</i> <i>Di atas</i></p>	<p><i>sekolah kami</i> <i>rumah dia</i> <i>kotak ini</i> <i>bilik mereka</i> <i>almari</i> <i>motokar itu</i></p>	<p><i>ada</i></p>	<p><i>motosikal.</i> <i>gambar</i> <i>kerusi</i> <i>kanak-kanak.</i> <i>televisyen.</i> <i>kapur</i> <i>katil</i> <i>loceng</i> <i>kemela</i> <i>wang</i> <i>bola</i></p>

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. Your letter is in this file.
2. There are many audio-visual aids in that resource room.
3. My friend has many compact discs.
4. There is a computer, a mouse and a keyboard on the table.
5. My computer has the *Window 98* program.
6. My cousin is a computer specialist in London.
7. There is a lot of data in that disc.
8. There are twenty eggs in Mary's basket.
9. There is money in that envelope.
10. Your friend is in that room.
11. His sister is a lecturer in the university.
12. Encik Sarawaran and his wife were at the stadium.
13. His children are under that big tree.
14. There is no dog and cat in our house.
15. Our country is hot, their country is cold.

Now check the sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Surat awak ada di dalam fail ini.*
2. *Di dalam bilik sumber itu ada banyak alat pandang dengar.*
3. *Kawan saya ada banyak cakera padat.*
4. *Di atas meja itu ada sebuah komputer, tetikus dan papan kekunci.*
5. *Komputer saya ada program "Window 98".*
6. *Sepupu saya seorang pakar komputer di London.*
7. *Di dalam cakera itu ada banyak data.*
8. *Di dalam bakul Mary ada dua puluh biji telur.*
9. *Di dalam sampul surat itu ada wang.*

10. *Kawan awak ada di dalam bilik.*
11. *Kakak dia seorang pensyarah di universiti.*
12. *Encik Sarawaran dan isterinya ada di stadium.*
13. *Anak-anak dia ada di bawah pokok besar itu.*
14. *Di dalam rumah kami tidak ada anjing dan kucing.*
15. *Negara kita panas, negara mereka sejuk.*

### ADJECTIVES

#### (Positive and Comparative)

If a person or thing is compared with another as being alike or equal in some respects, the word *sama* (meaning the *same*) is used before the Adjective. Examples:

<i>sama tinggi</i>	of the <b>same</b> height
<i>sama besar</i>	of the <b>same</b> size
<i>sama panjang</i>	of the <b>same</b> length
<i>sama panjang</i>	as long as
<i>sama cantik</i>	as beautiful as

Examples in sentences:

*Awak dan saya sama tinggi; or*  
*Awak sama tinggi dengan saya.*  
You and I are of the same height.

*Buah kelapa dan bola sama besar; or*  
*Buah kelapa sama besar dengan bola.*  
A coconut and a ball are of the same size.

*Pensel itu dan pensel ini sama panjang; or*  
*Pensel itu sama panjang dengan pensel ini.*  
That pencil is as long as this pencil.

## Comparative Adjectives

When an Adjective is used comparatively, the word *lebih* or *lagi* is placed before the Adjective, followed by *daripada* (than), as in the following examples:

*Menghantar pesanan melalui mel elektronik **lebih** laju daripada mel udara.*

Sending messages through the electronic mail is faster than air mail.

*Perak **lebih** murah daripada emas.*

Silver is cheaper than gold.

*Pen awak **lebih** baik daripada pen saya.*

Your pen is better than mine.

*Kayu **lebih** ringan daripada besi.*

Wood is lighter than iron.

The word *lagi* may, of course, be used in place of *lebih* in the above sentences. The above examples can also be expressed as follows:

*Mel elektronik dan mel udara, laju **lagi** mel elektronik.*

(literally means: Electronic mail and air mail, electronic is faster.)

*Perak dengan emas, murah **lagi** perak.*

(literally means: Silver and gold, silver is cheaper.)

*Pen awak dengan pen saya, baik **lagi** pen awak.*

(literally means: Your pen and my pen, your pen is better.)

*Kayu dengan besi, ringan **lagi** kayu.*

(literally means: Wood and iron, wood is lighter.)

## Conversation

*Ramli: Mana lebih mahal, emas atau besi?*

*James: Tentulah emas, tapi besi lebih berguna.*

*Ramli: Mengapa besi lebih berguna?*

*James: Besi keras. Daripada besi kita boleh buat kapal, motokar, motosikal, basikal dan barang-barang lain.*

*Ramli: Bolehkah kita buat kapal terbang?*

*James: Kapal terbang tak boleh; sebab, besi berat. Kapal terbang mesti ringan.*

*Ramli: Apakah barang-barang kecil kita boleh buat daripada besi?*

*James: Kita boleh buat lembing, pedang, pisau dan kuali.*

**Note:** *tapi* is short form of *tetapi*. It is used in conversation only.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*barang*, thing

*bulan*, moon

*emas*, gold

*kayu*, wood

*besi*, iron

*getah*, rubber

*perak*, silver

*kapal terbang*, aeroplane

### Adjectives

*bagus*, good; fine

*baik*, good

*berat*, heavy

*berguna*, useful

*keras*, hard

*kuat*, strong

*laju*, fast

*pandai*, clever

*canggih*, sophisticated

*ringan*, light

*tua*, old

*rendah*, short (in stature)

*jahat*, bad; naughty

*unik*, unique

### Miscellaneous

*buat*, make

*boleh*, can

*daripada*, from; than

*mengapa*, why

*tentulah*, certainly

*lain*, other

*sebab*, because

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. My laptop computer is new.
2. The word processor is useful.
3. The design of that condominium is unique.
4. This video cassette recorder (VCR) is dear but it is durable.
5. The Kuala Lumpur Twin Towers are of the same height.
6. A computer is more expensive than a typewriter.
7. The Perdana car is bigger than the Kancil car.
8. The movie "Titanic" is more popular than the movie "Twister".
9. The light rail transport is faster than the train.
10. A comedy is funnier than a horror movie.
11. Playing computer games is more interesting than playing scrabble.
12. Computer-assisted learning is more interesting than classroom teaching.
13. The *Windows* programme is user-friendlier than the Disk Operating System (DOS).



14. Condominiums in town are more sophisticated than the houses in the village.
15. Printing documents using the laser printer is clearer than printing using the dot matrix printer.
16. Those two rivers are of the same length.
17. His father is as old as my father.
18. This picture is as beautiful as that picture.
19. This week is hotter than last week.
20. Home-cooked food is more delicious than food sold in the stall.

Now check the sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Komputer riba saya baru.*
2. *Pemproses kata adalah berguna.*
3. *Rekabentuk kondominium itu unik.*
4. *Perakam kaset video ini mahal tetapi tahan lama.*
5. *Menara Berkembar Kuala Lumpur sama tinggi.*
6. *Komputer lebih mahal daripada mesin taip.*
7. *Kereta Perdana lebih besar daripada kereta Kancil.*
8. *Filem Titanic lebih terkenal daripada filem "Twister".*
9. *Transit aliran ringan lebih laju daripada keretapi.*
10. *Filem komedi lebih lucu daripada filem seram.*
11. *Bermain permainan komputer lebih seronok daripada bermain "scrabble".*
12. *Pembelajaran bantuan komputer lebih menarik daripada pembelajaran bilik darjah.*
13. *Program "Windows" lebih mudah digunakan daripada sistem pengendalian cakera (DOS).*
14. *Kondominium-kondominium di bandar lebih canggih daripada rumah-rumah di kampung.*
15. *Mencetak dokumen dengan pencetak laser lebih jelas daripada mencetak dengan pencetak matriks titik.*
16. *Sungai dua buah itu sama panjang.*

17. *Bapa dia sama tua dengan bapa saya.*
18. *Gambar ini sama cantik dengan gambar itu.*
19. *Minggu ini lebih panas daripada minggu lepas.*
20. *Makanan yang dimasak di rumah lebih lazat daripada makanan yang dijual di gerai.*

## LESSON 14

### ADJECTIVES (Superlative)

Superlative Adjectives in Bahasa Melayu can be formed in three ways:

1. By placing the words *yang* before and *sekali* after the Adjectives respectively. Examples:

<i>yang tebal sekali</i>	the thickest
<i>yang cantik sekali</i>	the most beautiful
<i>yang baik sekali</i>	the best

2. By adding the phrase *yang paling* before the Adjectives. Examples:

<i>yang paling kuat</i>	the strongest
<i>yang paling enak</i>	the most delicious
<i>yang paling tinggi</i>	the highest

3. By affixing *ter* to the Adjectives. Examples:

<i>terbaru</i>	the latest
<i>termahal</i>	the most expensive
<i>terbesar</i>	the largest
<i>tercanggih</i>	the most sophisticated

**Note:** Be warned that only certain Adjectives can take the prefix *ter* to form the superlative. Only through extensive reading can you tell which Adjectives can take on this prefix.

In Lesson 1, you were told that the English copula *am, is, are, was, and were* are not normally rendered in Bahasa Melayu, but when you are going to expound or explain something, then the copula are rendered by the word *ialah* or *adalah*. Examples:

*Saya **ialah** pelajar yang sangat suka belajar bahasa.*  
I **am** a student who is very keen in learning languages.

*Gunung Kinabalu **adalah** gunung yang paling tinggi sekali di Malaysia.*  
Gunung Kinabalu **is** the highest mountain in Malaysia.

*Malaysia dan Indonesia **ialah** dua buah negara yang mendapat banyak hujan.*  
Malaysia and Indonesia **are** two countries which get plenty of rain.

*Francis Light **ialah** orang Inggeris yang pertama mendarat di Pulau Pinang.*  
Francis Light **was** the first Englishman to land in Penang.

*Datuk Seri Dr. Mahathir Mohamad **adalah** pemimpin teragung negara kita.*  
Datuk Seri Dr. Mahathir Mohamad **is** the greatest leader of our country.

Examples of Superlative Adjectives used in sentences:

*Menara Kuala Lumpur merupakan menara **yang ter-canggih** di Malaysia.*

The Kuala Lumpur Tower is the most sophisticated tower in Malaysia.

*Koridor Raya Multimedia menggunakan teknologi maklumat yang terbaru.*

The Multimedia Super Corridor (MSC) uses the latest Information Technology (IT).

*Jambatan Pulau Pinang ialah jambatan yang paling panjang sekali di Asia.*

The Penang Bridge is the longest bridge in Asia.

*Itukah kamus yang paling baik?*

Is that the best dictionary?

*Bandar yang paling sibuk di dunia ialah Tokyo.*

The busiest city in the world is Tokyo.

*Basikal jenis inilah yang paling murah.*

Bicycles of this brand are the cheapest.

*Ahmad ialah pelajar yang terbaik di sekolah kami.*

Ahmad is the best student in our school.

*Bangunan yang tertinggi di Kuala Lumpur ialah Menara Berkembar Petronas.*

The tallest building in Kuala Lumpur is the Petronas Twin Towers.

*Sekolah yang terdekat dengan rumahnya ialah Sekolah Bistari Damansara.*

The nearest school to his house is the Damansara Smart School.

*Kamera video yang paling mahal bukanlah semestinya yang paling baik.*

The most expensive video camera is not necessarily the best.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*bandaraya*, city

*menara*, tower, minaret

*ibu kota*, capital

*kenderaan*, transport, vehicle

*manusia*, people, human being

*menara*, tower

*masa*,, time

*hadiah*, prize, present

*permukaan*, surface, level

*rantau*, region

*senibina*, architecture

### Adjectives

*enak*, delicious

*sibuk*, busy

*gembira*, happy

*indah*, splendid, magnificent

*istimewa*, special;

remarkable

*makmur*, prosperous

### Miscellaneous

*mungkin*, possibly

*semestinya*, necessarily

*sentiasa*, always

*di antara*, among, between

*sedikit*, a few; a little

*dipenuhi*, to be congested

*dibanjiri*, to flood

*dengan*, with

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

Read the following passage and pick out all the Adjectives used in the superlative.

### *Ibu Kota Malaysia*

*Kuala Lumpur ialah ibu kota Malaysia, dan juga bandaraya yang terbesar di Malaysia. Bandaraya ini jauh lebih besar dari Pulau Pinang atau Johor Bahru.*

*Sekarang di Kuala Lumpur kita boleh melihat banyak bangunan yang tinggi-tinggi. Bangunan yang paling tinggi sekarang ialah Menara Berkembar Petronas. Bangunan yang*

*menpunyai lapan puluh lapan tingkat ini adalah bangunan yang paling tinggi di dunia. Dalam sedikit masa lagi mungkin ada bangunan yang lebih tinggi daripada bangunan ini. Di antara bangunan-bangunan yang terbaru ialah Menara Kuala Lumpur.*

*Bangunan yang tertua dan istimewa senibinanya ialah Bangunan Sultan Abdul Samad. Ini ialah bangunan kerajaan dan di menara bangunan ini terletak sebuah jam besar dengan empat permukaannya.*

*Bangunan Parlimen adalah juga sebuah bangunan terindah di ibukota. Ia terletak di suatu kawasan lapang yang cantik di Taman Bunga.*

*Bandaraya Kuala Lumpur adalah pusat pentadbiran Malaysia yang merupakan pusat perdagangan antarabangsa di mana ekonominya berkembang dengan begitu pesat sekali.*

## **Exercise**

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. The Kuala Lumpur International Airport (KLIA) is the largest airport in Malaysia.
2. Alto Bolden is the fastest athlete in the world.
3. Computer game is the most popular game nowadays.
4. The Great Wall of China is the longest wall in the world.
5. AIDS is the most dangerous disease.
6. The Australian team is the strongest team in the 16th Commonwealth Games.
7. Local fruit is the cheapest fruit in the market.
8. The hard disk is the most sensitive part in the computer.

9. The commuter is the most convenient means of transport.
10. Information from the Internet is the latest.
11. Perlis is the smallest state in Malaysia.
12. The Penang Bridge is the longest bridge in the Asian region.
13. Our grandfather is the oldest person in our house.
14. The most hardworking boy got a prize.
15. Milk is the best food for children.
16. Mt Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
17. The lazy boy got the lowest mark.
18. The Beatles is the most well-known band in the world.
19. Paris is the most expensive city in the world.
20. The red orchid is the most beautiful flower in the park.

Now check the sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Lapangan Terbang Antarabangsa Kuala Lumpur ialah lapangan terbang yang terbesar di Malaysia.*
2. *Alto Bolden ialah atlit yang terpanjant di dunia.*
3. *Permainan komputer ialah permainan yang paling disukai ramai masa kini.*
4. *Tembok Besar China ialah tembok yang terpanjang di dunia.*
5. *Penyakit AIDS ialah penyakit yang paling berbahaya.*
6. *Pasukan Australia ialah pasukan yang paling hebat dalam Sukan Komanwel ke-16.*
7. *Buah-buahan tempatan ialah buah-buahan yang paling murah di pasar.*
8. *Cakera keras ialah bahagian yang paling sensitif dalam komputer.*
9. *Komuter ialah pengangkutan yang paling mudah.*



10. *Maklumat yang terdapat dari Internet ialah maklumat yang terbaru.*
11. *Perlis ialah negeri yang kecil sekali di Malaysia.*
12. *Jambatan Pulau Pinang ialah jambatan yang paling panjang di rantau Asia.*
13. *Datuk kami ialah orang yang tua sekali dalam rumah kami.*
14. *Budak yang paling rajin mendapat hadiah.*
15. *Susu ialah makanan yang baik sekali untuk kanak-kanak.*
16. *Gunung Everest ialah gunung yang tertinggi sekali di dunia.*
17. *Budak yang malas dapat markah yang rendah sekali.*
18. *The Beatles ialah kugiran yang terkenal sekali di dunia.*
19. *Paris ialah bandaraya yang mahal sekali di dunia.*
20. *Orkid merah itu yang cantik sekali di dalam taman itu.*

## LESSON 15

### PRONOUNS

#### (Interrogative Pronouns; Relative Pronouns)

#### Interrogative Pronouns

<i>Apa?</i>	What?
<i>Yang mana?</i>	Which?
<i>Siapa?</i>	Who?
<i>Siapa punya?</i>	Whose?
<i>Mana? Di mana?</i>	Where?

Examples in sentences:

*Apa itu ('tu)? or Itu apa?*

What is that?

*Siapa orang itu? or Orang itu siapa?*

Who is that man?

*Siapa punya ini ('ni)? or Ini siapa punya?*

Whose is this?

*Yang mana pen awak? or Pen awak yang mana?*

Which is your pen?

*Di mana pejabat pos?*  
Where is the post office?

*Siapa nama awak?*  
What is your name?

**Note:** Only in this case, the word *what* is rendered by *siapa*. It is impolite to say in Malay, *Apa nama awak?*

## Relative Pronouns

Who	}	Yang
Which		
What		
What		

Examples in sentences:

*Orang yang malas tidak ada wang.*  
People who are lazy have no money.

*Itulah gambar yang saya hendak beli.*  
That is the picture which I want to buy.

*Itulah kerani yang ada rumah baru.*  
That is the clerk who has a new house.

*Inilah yang saya ada.*  
That is what I have.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*perisian komputer*, computer software

*pensyarah*, lecturer

*loceng*, bell

*apartmen*, apartment

*kolam renang*, swimming pool      *disket*, diskette

## Conversation

*Mazuin: Ini payung awak, Rani?*

*Rani: Bukan. Itu bukan payung saya.*

*Mazuin: Yang mana payung awak?*

*Rani: Payung saya yang merah, tu. (1)*

*Mazuin: Cantik, payung awak!*

*Rani: Payung awak lagi cantik, Mazuin. Payung awak baru; payung saya dah buruk. (2)*

*Mazuin: Itu tak kira. (3) Payung baru berguna, payung buruk pun berguna. Kalau ada payung kita tak kena (4) hujan.*

*Rani: Yalah. Kalau hujan, (5) kita tak basah.*

### Note:

1. The word *tu* is abbreviated from *itu*.
2. The word *dah* is abbreviated from *sudah* already.
3. The phrase *tak kira* literally means *not calculated*; in this case it means *immaterial*.
4. The phrase *tak kena* literally means *not touched*; in this case it means *not affected*.
5. The word *it* in the English phrase *If it rains* is not translated. Therefore, we just say *Kalau hujan*.

## Exercise

Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the correct Interrogative or Relative Pronouns, and then check your answers with those given after this exercise:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ *nama jurulatih awak?*
2. *Bangunan \_\_\_\_\_ tinggi itu bangunan Dayabumi?*
3. \_\_\_\_\_ *ada di dalam peti sejuk itu?*
4. *Kanak-kanak \_\_\_\_\_ miskin dapat bantuan.*
5. *Kamus di atas almari itu \_\_\_\_\_ ?*
6. *Di dalam laci ini ada surat; \_\_\_\_\_ surat awak?*
7. *Perakam pita video itu \_\_\_\_\_ ?*
8. *Peladang \_\_\_\_\_ rajin dapat banyak wang.*
9. \_\_\_\_\_ *ada di dalam ketuhar mikro itu?*
10. \_\_\_\_\_ *banglo baru itu?*

The answers are:

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>siapa</i>       | 6. <i>yang mana</i>    |
| 2. <i>yang</i>        | 7. <i>siapa punya</i>  |
| 3. <i>apa</i>         | 8. <i>yang</i>         |
| 4. <i>yang</i>        | 9. <i>apa</i>          |
| 5. <i>siapa punya</i> | 10. <i>siapa punya</i> |

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. Who is that woman?
2. Which is your new Volvo car?
3. Whose racket is this?
4. That is my computer software.
5. That is the bicycle which has no bell.
6. What is your lecturer's name?
7. Whose apartment is that?
8. Which is your car?
9. This is the swimming pool which is clean.
10. Who has no diskette?

Check the sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Siapa perempuan itu?*
2. *Yang mana kereta Volvo baru awak?*
3. *Raket siapa ini?*
4. *Itu perisian komputer saya.*
5. *Itulah basikal yang tidak ada loceng.*
6. *Siapa nama pensyarah awak?*
7. *Apartmen siapa itu?*
8. *Yang mana motokar awak?*
9. *Inilah kolam renang yang bersih.*
10. *Siapa tidak ada disket?*

## LESSON 16

### VERBS

(Class I Verbs: pergi, naik, etc.)

You now have come to the study of Verbs, one of the most important parts of speech, and therefore you should devote much more time to it. It is said that a Verb is the master word, the king of words. It is the word that governs, dominates and breathes life into a sentence.

You cannot speak Bahasa Melayu correctly without being able to use Verbs in their correct forms.

Many Bahasa Melayu Verbs can be used in their root form. In many cases, they need prefixes or suffixes before they can be used in sentences, and in a few other cases they have to take both prefixes and suffixes.

You will be fascinated to learn that just by affixing the Verb with a prefix or a suffix, you can change the shade of meaning of Bahasa Melayu Verbs.

We shall begin using the form of Verbs which do not require prefixes or suffixes. We call these the Class I Verbs. (A list of Class I Verbs is given in Appendix A). Study the following sentences:

*Saya makan keju.*

I eat cheese.

*Kakak saya tinggal di Petaling Jaya.*  
My sister **lives** in Petaling Jaya.

*Dia pergi ke pejabat tiap-tiap hari.*  
She **goes** to office every day.

*Kadang-kadang kami mandi di sungai.*  
Sometimes we **bathe** in the river.

*Anak kucing itu tidur di lantai.*  
The kitten **sleeps** on the floor.

*Bapa saya balik ke rumah pada pukul lima.*  
My father **returns** home at five o'clock.

*Awak fikir dia tahukah (bahawa) saya pelajar Bahasa Melayu?*  
Do you **think** he knows that I am a Malay language student?

*Komuter pertama sampai di pekan kami pada pukul tujuh pagi.*  
The first commuter **arrives** in our town at seven o'clock in the morning.

*Saya main tenis tiap-tiap pagi.*  
I **play** tennis every morning.

*Ular besar keluar dari dalam lubang.*  
The big snake **comes** out from (inside) a hole.

*Dia duduk di kerusi, kami duduk di bangku panjang.*  
He **sits** on a chair, we sit on a long bench.

*Banyak buah durian dan rambutan datang dari kampung kami.*  
A lot of durians and rambutans **come** from our village.



## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*anak kucing*, kitten  
*kilometer*, kilometre  
*pejabat*, office  
*lantai*, floor  
*laut*, sea

*pagi*, morning; a.m.  
*petang*, evening; p.m.  
*teh*, tea  
*waktu pagi*, in the morning  
*waktu petang*, in the evening

### Verbs

*balik*, to return  
*datang*, to come  
*duduk*, to sit  
*fikir*, to think  
*keluar*, to go out  
*makan*, to eat  
*mandi*, to bathe

*masuk*, to enter  
*minum*, to drink  
*tidur*, to sleep  
*sampai*, to arrive; to reach  
*tinggal*, to live; to remain;  
to stay

### Miscellaneous

*banyak*, many  
*kelmarin*, yesterday  
*ke*, to (a place)  
*ke mana*, (to) where  
*di mana*, (at) where  
*dari*, from (a place)  
*nya*, his, her, its (placed  
after Nouns)  
*dengan*, by; with

*a lot of*, semua, all  
*tiap-tiap hari*, every day  
*dengan*, by; with  
*pada*, at (time)  
*lepas*, after  
*pada pukul berapa*, at  
what time  
*pada*, at (time)

## Conversation

*Awak pergi ke mana semalam, Encik Yusof?*  
*Semalam saya pergi ke rumah abang saya.*

*Di mana rumah abang awak?*

*Rumah abang saya di Port Dickson.*

*Rumah abang awak di dalam pekan Port Dicksonkah?*

*Tidak, rumah abang saya lima kilometer dari pekan Port Dickson.*

*Awak keluar dari rumah pukul berapa?*

*Saya keluar dari rumah pukul lapan pagi.*

*Awak pergi dengan siapa?*

*Saya pergi dengan isteri dan anak-anak saya.*

*Awak pergi dengan apa?*

*Kami pergi dengan motokar.*

*Awak makan nasi di rumah abang awak?*

*Ya, kami makan nasi dan minum teh di rumah abang saya.*

*Lepas makan awak mandikah di laut Port Dickson?*

*Ya, lepas makan kami semua mandi di laut Port Dickson.*

*Di dalam laut Port Dickson ada banyakkah ikan?*

*Saya fikir di dalam laut di Port Dickson ada banyak ikan.*

*Awak tidurkah di rumah abang awak?*

*Tidak, kami tidak tidur di rumah abang saya.*

*Pukul berapa awak balik ke Kuala Lumpur?*

*Kami balik ke Kuala Lumpur pukul lima petang.*

*Awak sampai di Kuala Lumpur pukul berapa?*

*Kami sampai di Kuala Lumpur pukul tujuh petang.*

**Exercise**

Combine the words in the three columns below to form as many meaningful sentences as you can. Just be sure to use words from each of the three columns in every sentence you form.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<p><i>Saya</i>  <i>Abang dia</i>  <i>Bapa awak</i>  <i>Doktor ini</i>  <i>Guru kami</i></p>	<p><i>balik</i>  <i>datang</i>  <i>makan</i>  <i>mandi</i>  <i>pergi</i>  <i>tidur</i>  <i>tinggal</i>  <i>minum</i>  <i>keluar</i></p>	<p><i>(pada) pukul lapan.</i>  <i>dari Pulau Pinang.</i>  <i>di sebuah hotel.</i>  <i>dengan motokar.</i>  <i>ke pejabat.</i>  <i>dengan seorang kawan.</i></p>

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. They play tennis every Friday.
2. The students use the Internet to obtain information.
3. She listens to Elton John's songs.
4. I go to town by commuter.
5. Mahmud uses a calculator to count.
6. My brother records his favourite programme with a videotape recorder.
7. The teacher writes on a whiteboard.
8. The photographer fixes a zoom lens on his camera.
9. The clerk sends documents to clients by using the facsimile.
10. Jasmin drinks orange juice every morning.
11. My sister teaches in the Garden International School.
12. Sometimes the children swim in the swimming pool.
13. She sings in the night club.

14. The commuter arrives in Kajang at seven o'clock.
15. I go jogging every evening.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Mereka main tenis setiap Jumaat.*
2. *Pelajar-pelajar gunakan Internet untuk mendapat maklumat.*
3. *Dia dengar lagu-lagu Elton John.*
4. *Saya naik komuter ke bandar.*
5. *Mahmud guna kalkulator untuk membilang.*
6. *Abang saya rakam program kegemarannya dengan sebuah perakam pita video.*
7. *Guru itu tulis di papan putih.*
8. *Jurugambar itu pasang kanta zum pada kameranya.*
9. *Kerani itu hantar dokumen kepada pelanggan dengan mengguna faksimile.*
10. *Jasmin minum jus oren tiap-tiap pagi.*
11. *Kakak saya mengajar di Sekolah Antarabangsa Garden.*
12. *Kadang-kadang kanak-kanak berenang di kolam renang.*
13. *Dia menyanyi di kelab malam.*
14. *Komuter itu sampai di Kajang pada pukul tujuh.*
15. *Saya pergi jogging setiap petang.*

## LESSON 17

### VERBS

#### (Tenses of Verbs [1])

You might have noticed in the previous lesson that the same form of Verb is used for both present and past tenses. In Bahasa Melayu, tenses are understood from the context. The same form of Verb can be used for the present tense, the future tense, the past tense, and even the continuous tense. When the sentence is ambiguous, then we add the appropriate words or phrases denoting time.

The sentence, *Saya makan nasi*, could mean:

- I eat rice (Simple Present Tense); or
- I ate rice (Simple Past Tense); or
- I am eating rice (Present Continuous Tense).

Observe the following sentences:

1. *Pelajaran Bahasa Melayu **mula** pada pukul 9.00 pagi tiap-tiap hari.*
2. *Dia **mula** belajar Bahasa Melayu semalam.*

The same form of Verb *mula* is used for sentences 1 and 2, but in sentence 1 it is in the present tense, while in sentence 2, it is

in the past tense because the word *semalam* (yesterday) is a word indicating past time.

Now observe the following sentences:

1. *Saya pergi ke pejabat tiap-tiap hari.*
2. *Saya pergi ke Ipoh esok.*

The Verb *pergi* is in the present tense in sentence 1, and in the future tense in sentence 2 because the word *esok* (tomorrow) indicates its tense.

If a sentence in the future tense is ambiguous in its futurity, then the word *akan* is used. This is equivalent to the English words *shall* and *will*. Examples:

*Kita akan dapat cuti lima hari.*  
We shall get five days leave.

*Dia akan jadi seorang kerani.*  
He will become a clerk.

*Lembu itu akan mati kalau tidak makan ubat.*  
The cow will die if it does not take medicine.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*gajah*, elephant  
*hujan*, rain  
*sayur*, vegetable

*kebun*, garden  
*pokok*, tree; plant  
*daging*, meat

### Adjectives

*susah*, difficult

*tidak berapa susah*,  
not so difficult

## Verbs

*belajar*, to learn

*tumbuh*, to grow

*boleh*, can

*dapat*, to get

*hidup*, to be alive, to live

*mula*, to begin

*mati*, to die, to stop

(of engines, clocks, etc)

*turun*, to fall (of rain), to

go down, to come down

*jadi*, to become, to form to  
happen

## Adverbs

*esok*, tomorrow

*juga*, also

*bila*, when

*hari ini*, today

*tiap-tiap hari*, every day

*dua tahun dahulu*, two

years ago

*tiga bulan sudah*, three

months ago

*tiap-tiap orang*, everybody,  
everyone

## Prepositions

*dari*, from (time) and place

*hingga*, till, until

*ke*, to (place)

*kepada*, to (persons or

animate objects)

## Conjunction

*kalau*, if

## Conversation

*Awak belajar Bahasa Inggeris, Encik Tan?*

*Ya, saya belajar Bahasa Inggeris.*

*Bila awak mula belajar Bahasa Inggeris?*

*Saya mula belajar Bahasa Inggeris tiga bulan sudah.*

*Di mana awak belajar Bahasa Inggeris?*

*Saya belajar Bahasa Inggeris di pejabat saya.*

*Dengan siapa awak belajar?*

*Saya belajar dengan kawan-kawan saya.*

*Awak belajar dari pukul berapa hingga pukul berapa?*

*Saya belajar dari pukul 5.00 hingga pukul 6.00 petang.*

*Siapa nama guru awak?*

*Nama guru saya Encik Frederick.*

*Awak fikir Bahasa Inggeris senang atau susah?*

*Saya fikir Bahasa Inggeris tidak berapa susah.*

*Encik Tan, awak makan apa tiap-tiap hari?*

*Saya makan nasi tiap-tiap hari.*

*Awak makan nasi dengan lauk apa?*

*Saya makan nasi berlaukkan daging, atau ikan dan sayur.*

*Ikan hidup di mana?*

*Ikan hidup di sungai atau di laut.*

*Bolehkah ikan laut hidup di sungai?*

*Tak boleh; ikan laut tak boleh hidup di sungai.*

*Bolehkah ikan sungai hidup di laut?*

*Tak boleh juga; ikan sungai tak boleh hidup di laut.*

*Bolehkah ikan hidup kalau tidak ada air?*

*Tak boleh; ikan tak boleh hidup kalau tidak ada air.*

*Apa akan jadi?*

*Ikan itu akan mati.*

*Sayur-sayur tumbuh di mana?*

*Sayur-sayur tumbuh di kebun sayur.*

*Apa akan jadi kepada pokok-pokok dan sayur-sayur kalau hujan tidak turun?*

*Pokok-pokok dan sayur-sayur itu akan mati.*



**Exercise**

Combine the words in the two columns below to form as many meaningful sentences as you can. Just be sure to use words from each of the two columns in every sentence you form.

Column 1	Column 2
<p><i>Saya makan durian</i>  <i>Anjing itu mati</i>  <i>Pokok itu hidup</i>  <i>Dia dapat wang</i>  <i>Abang saya tinggal di Petaling Jaya</i>  <i>Guru kami balik dari Singapura</i>  <i>Pelawat-pelawat itu sampai di sini</i></p>	<p><i>esok.</i>  <i>semalam.</i>  <i>lima hari dahulu.</i>  <i>tiga bulan dahulu.</i>  <i>dua tahun dahulu.</i></p>

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. All the participants stay in the Sports Village at Bukit Jalil.
2. We drank mineral water just now.
3. Dasyrin keys in all the data into the computer.
4. I played squash yesterday.
5. Natasha bought a laser disc this morning.
6. Teachers are using computers to teach nowadays.
7. Tourists love to eat local fruits.
8. Students obtain the latest information from the Internet.
9. They went to the disco last night.
10. I go to the aerobics class once a week.
11. Many drivers use the highway from Kedah to Johor Bahru.
12. The plant will die if there is no water.
13. He slept from three to four o'clock.
14. The elephant died in the jungle four days ago.
15. If you go today, you can return tomorrow.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Semua peserta-peserta tinggal di Perkampungan Sukan di Bukit Jalil.*
2. *Kami minum air galian tadi.*
3. *Dasyrin masuk semua data ke dalam komputer.*
4. *Saya main skuasy kelmarin.*
5. *Natasha beli sekeping cakera laser pagi tadi.*
6. *Guru-guru zaman sekarang guna komputer untuk mengajar.*
7. *Pelancong-pelancong suka buah-buahan tempatan.*
8. *Pelajar-pelajar mendapat maklumat yang terkini dari Internet.*
9. *Mereka pergi ke disko semalam.*
10. *Saya pergi ke kelas senanam aerobik seminggu sekali.*
11. *Ramai pemandu guna lebuh raya dari Kedah ke Johor Bahru.*
12. *Pokok itu akan mati kalau tidak ada air.*
13. *Dia tidur dari pukul tiga hingga pukul empat.*
14. *Gajah itu mati di dalam hutan empat hari dahulu.*
15. *Kalau awak pergi hari ini awak boleh balik esok.*

## LESSON 18

### VERBS

#### (Class II Verbs: *me* [1])

The second kind of Verbs are those which take the prefix *me*. In most cases, these Verbs are transitive, that is, they take an Object, though in some cases the Object is not mentioned. We shall call these the Class II Verbs. Examples:

1. *Kami menonton filem "Titanic".*  
We are watching the movie "Titanic".
2. *Ella menyanyi lagu "Standing in The Eyes of The World".*  
Ella sings the song "Standing in The Eyes of The World".
3. *Bapanya menggali lubang kerana hendak menanam pokok mangga.*  
His father is digging a hole as he wants to plant a mango tree.
4. *Tiap-tiap pagi, dia menghantar anaknya ke kolej.*  
Every morning, he sends his son to college.
5. *Lim mengajar judo.*  
Lim teaches judo.

6. *Budak-budak itu **membasuh** pakaian.*  
Those children are washing clothes.
7. *Salmah **menyapu** sampah di dalam rumah.*  
Salmah is sweeping rubbish inside the house.
8. *Hashim **menulis** surat kepada abangnya.*  
Hashim is writing a letter to his (elder) brother.
9. *Anjing itu **menyalak** tidak berhenti-henti.*  
The dog is barking unceasingly.
10. *Anak kucing itu **melompat**.*  
The kitten is jumping.

You will note that in each of the sentences (1)-(8) above, there is an Object; therefore, they are transitive. Sentences (9) and (10) are intransitive.

The prefix *me* has to change its form, depending on the initial letter of the word to be prefixed, but it remains unchanged if the word begins with *l, m, n, ng, ny, r, w* or *y*. Examples:

<i>lawat</i>	becomes	<b>melawat</b> (to visit)
<i>maki</i>	becomes	<b>memaki</b> (to abuse)
<i>nilai</i>	becomes	<b>menilai</b> (to assess)
<i>nganga</i>	becomes	<b>menganga</b> (to open the mouth)
<i>nyanyi</i>	becomes	<b>menyanyi</b> (to sing)
<i>rasa</i>	becomes	<b>merasa</b> (to taste)
<i>wakil</i>	becomes	<b>mewakil</b> (i) (to represent)
<i>yakin</i>	becomes	<b>meyakin(kan)</b> (to convince)

When the word begins with *g, h, k, q, a, e, i, o, u*, *meng* is used. In the case of *k*, this initial letter is dropped. Examples:

<i>gali</i>	becomes	<b>menggali</b> (to dig)
<i>hantar</i>	becomes	<b>menghantar</b> (to send)
<i>kejar</i>	becomes	<b>mengejar</b> (to chase)

<i>qasar</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengqasar</i></b> (to shorten paryer)
<i>ajar</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengajar</i></b> (to teach)
<i>eja</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengeja</i></b> (to spell)
<i>ikat</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengikat</i></b> (to tie)
<i>orak</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengorak</i></b> (to untie a knot)
<i>ukur</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengukur</i></b> (to measure)

When the word begins with *b, v, p, or f*, *mem* is used; and in the case of *p* or *f*, the initial letter is dropped. Examples:

<i>basuh</i>	becomes	<b><i>membasuh</i></b> (to wash)
<i>veto</i>	becomes	<b><i>memveto</i></b> (to veto)
<i>pakai</i>	becomes	<b><i>memakai</i></b> (to wear; to use)
<i>fikir</i>	becomes	<b><i>memikir</i></b> (to think)

When the word begins with *c, j, d, t, or z*, *men* is used; and in the case of *t* the initial letter is dropped. Examples:

<i>cari</i>	becomes	<b><i>mencari</i></b> (to find)
<i>jawab</i>	becomes	<b><i>menjawab</i></b> (to answer)
<i>dengar</i>	becomes	<b><i>mendengar</i></b> (to hear, to listen)
<i>tarik</i>	becomes	<b><i>menarik</i></b> (to pull)
<i>ziarah</i>	becomes	<b><i>menziarah</i></b> (to visit a holy place; to visit as a courtesy)

When the word begins with *s*, *me* is modified to *meny*; and the initial letter *s* is dropped. Examples:

<i>sapu</i>	becomes	<b><i>menyapu</i></b> (to sweep)
<i>simpan</i>	becomes	<b><i>menyimpan</i></b> (to keep)

For all monosyllabic words, with the exception of a few, *menge* is used. Examples:

<i>pam</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengepam</i></b> (to pump)
<i>pos</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengepos</i></b> (to post letters)

<i>cam</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengecam</i></b> (to recognise)
<i>cap</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengecap</i></b> (to print)
<i>cat</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengecat</i></b> (to paint)
<i>lap</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengelap</i></b> (to wipe)
<i>sah</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengesah(kan)</i></b> (to certify, to confirm)
<i>bom</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengebom</i></b> (to bomb)
<i>tut</i>	becomes	<b><i>mengetut</i></b> (to budgraft)

The few exceptions are:

<i>had</i>	becomes	<b><i>menghad(kan)</i></b> (to limit)
<i>hal</i>	becomes	<b><i>menghal(kan)</i></b> (to relate)

## Words to Remember

<i>melukis (lukis)</i>	to draw
<i>melihat (lihat)</i>	to see; to watch
<i>melompat (lompat)</i>	to jump
<i>melawat (lawat)</i>	to visit
<i>melatih (latih)</i>	to train
<i>menilai (nilai)</i>	to assess
<i>menganga (nganga)</i>	to open the mouth
<i>menyanyi (nyanyi)</i>	to sing
<i>mengejar (kejar)</i>	to chase
<i>merasa (rasa)</i>	to taste
<i>menggali (gali)</i>	to dig
<i>menggigit (gigit)</i>	to bite
<i>menghantar (hantar)</i>	to send
<i>menghisap (hisap)</i>	to suck, to smoke
<i>mengajar (ajar)</i>	to teach
<i>mengumpul (kumpul)</i>	to collect
<i>mengirim (kirim)</i>	to send
<i>mengambil (ambil)</i>	to take
<i>meraba (raba)</i>	to grope
<i>mengikut (ikut)</i>	to follow

<i>mengikat (ikat)</i>	to tie
<i>mengukur (ukur)</i>	to measure
<i>membeli (beli)</i>	to buy
<i>membuat (buat)</i>	to make
<i>membuka (buka)</i>	to open
<i>membaca (baca)</i>	to read
<i>membasuh (basuh)</i>	to wash
<i>membawa (bawa)</i>	to bring
<i>memukul (pukul)</i>	to strike; to hit
<i>memakai (pakai)</i>	to wear; to use
<i>memotong (potong)</i>	to cut
<i>memegang (pegang)</i>	to hold
<i>memasang (pasang)</i>	to fix; to install; to switch on
<i>memilih (pilih)</i>	to choose
<i>memeriksa (periksa)</i>	to examine
<i>mencari (cari)</i>	to find
<i>mencukur (cukur)</i>	to cut hair; to shave
<i>menjawab (jawab)</i>	to answer
<i>menjemput (jemput)</i>	to invite
<i>menjahit (jahit)</i>	to stitch
<i>mendengar (dengar)</i>	to hear; to listen
<i>menutup (tutup)</i>	to close
<i>menolong (tolong)</i>	to help
<i>menulis (tulisi)</i>	to write
<i>menangkap (tangkap)</i>	to catch
<i>menolak (tolak)</i>	to push
<i>menengok (tengok)</i>	to see
<i>menerima (terima)</i>	to receive; to accept
<i>menarik (tarik)</i>	to pull
<i>menembak (tembak)</i>	to shoot
<i>menangis (tangis)</i>	to cry
<i>menyepak (sepak)</i>	to kick
<i>menyusun (susun)</i>	to arrange
<i>menyapu (sapu)</i>	to sweep
<i>menyoal (soal)</i>	to question; to ask

<i>menyimpan (simpan)</i>	to keep
<i>menyewa (sewa)</i>	to rent; to hire
<i>menyelam (selam)</i>	to dive

(There are 60 words in this list. As they are common words, you should try to learn them up.)

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. My mother listens to Skeeter Davies' songs.
2. We buy food at the supermarket.
3. I wash clothes with a washing machine.
4. Richard teaches me to play the guitar.
5. Helen sends a letter by air mail.
6. Queen Elizabeth visited Malaysia and Brunei recently.
7. The singer sings in a night club.
8. The new coach teaches three times a week.
9. Rich people keep their money in the bank.
10. Princess Diana died in 1997.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Emak saya mendengar lagu-lagu Skeeter Davies.*
2. *Kami membeli makanan di pasar raya.*
3. *Saya membasuh pakaian dengan mesin basuh.*
4. *Richard mengajar saya bermain gitar.*
5. *Helen menghantar surat dengan mel udara.*
6. *Ratu Elizabeth melawat Malaysia dan Brunei baru-baru ini.*
7. *Penyanyi itu menyanyi di kelab malam.*



8. *Jurulatih baru itu mengajar kami tiga kali seminggu.*
9. *Orang-orang kaya menyimpan wang mereka di dalam bank.*
10. *Puteri Diana meninggal dunia pada tahun 1997.*

## LESSON 19

### VERBS

#### (Class II Verbs: *me* [2])

Class II Verbs can also be formed from certain Nouns by adding the prefix *me*. Examples:

#### Nouns

*api* (fire)

*jala* (a casting-net)

*kipas* (a fan)

*parang* (a chopper)

*pedang* (a sword)

*atap* (roof)

*rotan* (a cane)

*ketam* (a plane)

*angin* (wind)

*paku* (a nail)

*gergaji* (a saw)

*jerat* (a snare)

*tenggala* (a plough)

*berus* (a brush)

*dayung* (an oar)

#### Verbs

*mengapi* (to incite)

*menjala* (to cast net)

*mengipas* (to fan)

*memarang* (to chop  
or slash)

*memedang* (to slash or  
to cut)

*mengatap* (to put up roof)

*merotan* (to cane)

*mengetam* (to plane)

*mengangin* (to expose to  
wind)

*memaku* (to nail)

*menggergaji* (to saw)

*menjerat* (to snare)

*menenggala* (to plough)

*memberus* (to brush)

*mendayung* (to row)

*galah* (a pole)

*senduk* (a ladle)

*kapak* (an axe)

*rokok* (a cigarette)

*menggalah* (to pole)

*menyenduk* (to ladle)

*mengapak* (to hack)

*merokok* (to smoke a  
cigarette)

You will observe that most of the Nouns in the above examples are *tools* or *implements* of some sort.

Study the following sentences:

*Nelayan itu menjala ikan pada waktu malam.*

The fisherman catches fish (with a casting-net) at night.

*Perempuan itu mengipas mukanya tidak berhenti-henti.*

The lady is fanning her face unceasingly.

*Hulubalang itu memedang musuhnya dari atas kudanya.*

The warrior slashed his enemy from his horseback.

*Dia menggergaji keping-keping papan untuk membuat meja.*

He saw pieces of planks to make tables.

*Kilang tersebut mengetin kira-kira 50,000 tin nanas tiap-tiap hari.*

The said factory cans about 50,000 tins of pineapples daily.

*Kah Seng menjerat burung dekat ladang itu.*

Kah Seng snared birds near the farm.

*Bapa Siti merokok selepas makan.*

Siti's father smokes a cigarette after a meal.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*atap*, roof  
*baja*, fertilizer  
*gigi*, tooth  
*hulubalang*, warrior  
*kapak*, axe  
*kilang*, factory  
*ladang*, farm  
*minggu*, week

*muka*, face  
*musuh*, enemy  
*papan*, plank  
*pemuda*, youth  
*penjual daging*, butcher  
*perahu*, boat  
*tukang kebun*, gardener  
*tulang*, bone

### Miscellaneous

*membuat*, to make  
*sambil*, while

*tajam*, sharp

### Exercise

Combine the words in the three columns below to form eight correct sentences.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<i>Puan Aminah</i>	<i>mengipas</i>	<i>perahu itu ke tepi sawahnya.</i>
<i>Tukang rumah itu sedang</i>	<i>merotan</i>	<i>api satenya.</i>
<i>Dengan dayung di tangan</i>	<i>merokok</i>	<i>gigi dua kali sehari.</i>
<i>mereka</i>	<i>mendayung</i>	<i>sepuluh batang sehari.</i>
<i>Kita mesti</i>	<i>memberus</i>	<i>anaknyanya kerana bermain</i>
<i>Penjual sate sedang</i>	<i>memaku</i>	<i>dalam hujan.</i>
<i>Kim Lan</i>	<i>menenggala</i>	<i>nasi dari dalam periuk.</i>
<i>Bapa dia</i>	<i>menyenduk</i>	<i>dinding rumahnya.</i>
<i>Peladang itu belum</i>		

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. Baharudin is caning his naughty son.
2. He rows the boat with one hand.
3. The lady teacher is fanning her face with a book.
4. The gardener cuts the flowers with a small knife.
5. At the Johor Causeway, the customs are checking the goods brought in from Singapore.
6. The old man smokes a cigarette while talking.
7. The butcher hacks the bones with a sharp axe.
8. That factory manufactures and cans fertilisers.
9. The carpenters plane the planks to make chairs.
10. The Municipal Council of Taiping is cutting down the trees to widen the road.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Baharudin sedang merotan anaknya yang nakal.*
2. *Dia mendayung perahu dengan sebelah tangan.*
3. *Guru perempuan itu mengipas mukanya dengan buku.*
4. *Tukang kebun memotong bunga dengan pisau kecil.*
5. *Di Tambak Johor, pihak kastam sedang memeriksa barang-barang yang dibawa masuk dari Singapura.*
6. *Orang tua itu merokok (menghisap rokok) sambil bercakap.*
7. *Penjual daging itu mengapak tulang dengan kapak tajam.*
8. *Kilang itu membuat dan mengetin baja.*
9. *Tukang-tukang kayu mengetam papan untuk membuat kerusi.*
10. *Majlis Perbandaran Taiping menebang pokok-pokok itu untuk memperluas jalan raya.*

## LESSON 20

### VERBS

#### (Class III Verbs: *ber*)

In the previous lesson, you have learnt to use a kind of Verbs which takes the prefix *me*. Now you will be introduced to Verbs which take the prefix *ber*. We shall call this the Class III Verbs. Verbs which take the prefix *ber* can be classified into two categories, each with a different purpose.

In the first category are Verbs which indicate an action performed by the doer to himself, that is to say no other person or party is involved in the act. These are Reflective Verbs.

The second category Verbs indicate an action performed by two or more persons or parties. Many of these show retaliative actions. These are Reciprocal Verbs.

#### Examples of 1st Category Verbs:

<i>bersenam</i>	to do physical exercises
<i>berhias</i>	to beautify oneself
<i>bersikat</i>	to comb one's hair
<i>berhenti</i>	to stop
<i>belajar</i>	to learn
<i>berdiri</i>	to stand
<i>bekerja</i>	to work
<i>bermain</i>	to play

<i>berenang</i>	to swim
<i>berjalan</i>	to walk
<i>bertolak</i>	to leave; to depart
<i>bersedia</i>	to get ready
<i>berpuasa</i>	to fast
<i>bertukar</i>	to be transferred
<i>berlari</i>	to run
<i>belayar</i>	to sail

Examples of 2nd Category Verbs:

<i>berjabat (tangan)</i>	to shake hands
<i>berpisah</i>	to leave one another
<i>bercium</i>	to kiss one another
<i>berpeluk</i>	to hug each other
<i>bertempur</i>	to clash with each other
<i>bekerjasama</i>	to co-operate
<i>bertumbuk</i>	to fight or punch each other
<i>berjumpa</i>	to meet each other
<i>bermain</i>	to play with others
<i>berjudi</i>	to gamble
<i>berkawan</i>	to make friends with others
<i>berkumpul</i>	to assemble with others
<i>berpecah</i>	to be separated from others
<i>bertikam</i>	to stab each other
<i>berjanji</i>	to make a promise with others
<i>berkahwin</i>	to marry one another
<i>bercerai</i>	to be divorced; to be separated from

**Note:** In some words, the *r* in *ber* is dropped. This is done for the sake of euphony. Examples: *belajar*, *bekerja*, *belayar*, *berenang*.

Examples of sentences using 1st Category Verbs:

*Murid-murid sekolah itu **bersenam** lat sehari.*

The pupils of that school do physical exercises every other day.

*Perempuan muda itu sedang **berhias** di dalam biliknya.*

The young lady is dressing up in her room.

*Biasanya dia **bersikat** tiga kali sehari.*

Usually he combs (his hair) three times a day.

*Bas itu **berhenti** di hadapan rumah kawan saya.*

The bus stops in front of my friend's house.

*Budak itu **berdiri** di bawah pokok mangga.*

The boy (or girl) is standing under a mango tree.

*Amin **bermain** di rumah; bapanya bekerja di pejabat.*

Amin plays at home; his father works in the office.

*Lima ekor itik **berenang** di dalam kolam.*

Five ducks are swimming in a pond.

*Keretapi ke utara **bertolak** pada pukul 8.50 pagi.*

The north-bound train leaves at 8.50 a.m.

*Orang Islam **berpuasa** dalam bulan Ramadan.*

Muslims fast in the month of Ramadan.

*Jamal **berlari** ke kedai.*

Jamal runs to the shop.

*Dalam tahun ini tiga buah kapal akan **belayar** ke Mekah.*

Three ships will sail to Mecca this year.

*Bapa saudara Mariam telah **bertukar** ke Ipoh bulan sudah.*

Mariam's uncle was transferred to Ipoh last month.



Examples in sentences of 2nd Category Verbs:

*Kasim **berjabat** tangan dengan Yusuf*

Kasim is shaking hands with Yusuf.

*Laila **berpeluk** dan **bercium** dengan Majnun.*

Laila and Majnun are hugging and kissing each other.

*Penjahat-penjahat itu **bertempur** dengan polis.*

The bandits clashed with the police.

*Orang ramai mesti **bekerjasama** dengan kerajaan*

The public must co-operate with the government.

*Apabila dua orang budak itu **berjumpa**, mereka **bertumbuk**.*

Whenever the two boys meet, they fight.

*Sambil **bermain**, mereka **bercakap**.*

While playing, they talk.

*Kami tidak suka **berkawan** dengan dia; dia suka **berjudi**.*

We don't like to make friends with him; he likes to gamble.

*Hari ini kita **berkumpul**, esok kita **bercerai**.*

Today we gather together, tomorrow we depart.

*Mereka hendak **berkahwin** minggu hadapan.*

They are getting married next week.

*Dia telah **berjanji** hendak pergi bersama-sama.*

He promised to go together.

*Perompak-perompak itu telah **bertikam** malam semalam.*

The robbers stabbed each other last night.

Setelah *berbual kira-kira setengah jam lamanya, mereka pun berpisah.*

After chit-chatting for about half-an-hour, they went their way.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*bapa saudara*, uncle  
*Islam*, Muslim  
*penjahat*, bandit  
*perompak*, robber  
*masa*, time (period)  
*tempat*, place  
*tahun*, year

*orang ramai*, public  
*kali*, time  
*kedai*, shop  
*kerajaan*, government  
*kilang*, factory  
*kolam*, pond, pool  
*mangga*, mango

### Verbs

*kena*, has to; have to  
*buat*, to do  
*ingin*, eager to

*mesti*, must  
*suka*, like

### Miscellaneous

*apabila*, when; whenever  
*biasanya*, usually  
*bagus*, fine  
*bagaimana*, how  
*benar*, truly; sincerely  
*lagi*, still  
*kira-kira*, about

*lat sehari*, every other day  
*lat seminggu*, every other week  
*belum*, not yet  
*dengannya*, with him  
*sambil*, while  
*ramai*, many (of people)

## Conversation

*Di mana awak bekerja sekarang, Encik Hasan?  
Sekarang saya bekerja di kilang elektronik di Petaling Jaya.*

*Bila awak mula bekerja di kilang elektronik itu?  
Sudah enam bulan.*

*Begitu! Bagaimana awak pergi bekerja?  
Saya pergi bekerja naik komuter.*

*Komuter bertolak pukul berapa?  
Komuter bertolak pukul 7.00 pagi.*

*Ramaikah orang naik komuter itu?  
Ramai, kadang-kadang saya kena berdiri di dalam  
komuter.*

*Komuter itu sampai di Petaling Jaya pukul berapa?  
Kira-kira pukul tujuh tiga suku (7.45).*

*Di mana ia berhenti?  
Ia berhenti di hadapan kilang tempat saya bekerja itu.*

*Pada masa petang awak buat apa, Encik Hasan?  
Kadang-kadang saya bersenam, kadang-kadang saya  
pergi berenang di Kolam Renang di Jalan Raja Chu-  
lan.*

*Adik awak Husain bekerja di Bank Negara lagikah?  
Tidak, dia telah berhenti.*

*Di mana dia bekerja sekarang?  
Sekarang dia bekerja di Pejabat Telekom.*

*Mengapa dia bertukar kerja?  
Katanya dia tidak suka kerja sebagai kerani.*

*Dia belum kahwin lagi?  
Belum, tetapi sudah bertunang.*

*Oh! Baguslah. Saya ingin benar hendak berjumpa den-  
gannya.*

*Bila dia datang ke sini suruhlah dia pergi ke rumah saya.*

*Baiklah.*

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. Marina has been sunbathing on the beach.
2. Tina works in the Kuala Lumpur International Airport.
3. The boys are playing tennis, the girls are playing volleyball.
4. We must co-operate to solve that problem.
5. He has separated from his wife.
6. Siti hugged her brother at the airport.
7. Children like to swim in the swimming pool.
8. After the Commonwealth Games, all the participants will return to their own countries.
9. Samad can speak in English and Japanese.
10. The express bus leaves the bus station at one o'clock.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Marina berjemur di pantai.*
2. *Tina bekerja di Lapangan Terbang Antarabangsa Kuala Lumpur.*
3. *Budak-budak lelaki bermain tenis, budak-budak perempuan bermain bola tampar.*
4. *Kita harus bekerjasama untuk menyelesaikan masalah itu.*
5. *Dia telah berpisah dengan isterinya.*
6. *Siti berpeluk dengan abangnya di lapangan terbang.*
7. *Kanak-kanak suka berenang di kolam renang.*

8. *Selepas tamat Sukan Komanwel, semua peserta-peserta akan bertolak pulang ke negara masing-masing.*
9. *Samad boleh bertutur dalam Bahasa Inggeris dan Bahasa Jepun.*
10. *Bas ekspres itu bertolak dari stesen pada pukul satu.*

## LESSON 21

### VERBS

#### (Class IV Verbs: *ter*)

Class IV Verbs take in the prefix *ter*, and are formed from a few Class I Verbs, and from the root of practically all Class II Verbs.

Examples of Class IV Verbs formed from Class I Verbs:

#### **Class I**

*masuk* (to enter)  
*bangun* (to wake up)  
*tidur* (to sleep)  
*lupa* (to forget)  
*ingat* (to remember)  
*nampak* (to be visible)  
*fikir* (to think)  
*tinggal* (to remain)  
*jatuh* (to drop)  
*diam* (to be silent)

#### **Class IV**

*termasuk*  
*terbangun*  
*tertudur*  
*terlupa*  
*teringat*  
*ternampak*  
*terfikir*  
*tertinggal*  
*terjatuh*  
*terdiam*

Examples of Class IV Verbs formed from the root of Class II Verbs:

#### **Class II**

*pijak* (to step on)  
*sepak* (to kick)

#### **Class IV**

*terpijak*  
*tersepak*

<i>minum</i> (to drink)	<i>terminum</i>
<i>langgar</i> (to knock against)	<i>terlanggar</i>
<i>panjat</i> (to climb)	<i>terpanjat</i>
<i>tolak</i> (to push)	<i>tertolak</i>
<i>ajar</i> (to teach)	<i>terajar</i>
<i>ikat</i> (to tie)	<i>terikat</i>
<i>pasang</i> (to switch on)	<i>terpasang</i>
<i>kejar</i> (to chase)	<i>terkejar</i>
<i>tulis</i> (to write)	<i>tertulis</i>
<i>letak</i> (to place)	<i>terletak</i>
<i>susun</i> (to arrange)	<i>tersusun</i>
<i>gantung</i> (to hang)	<i>tergantung</i>
<i>bayar</i> (to pay)	<i>terbayar</i>

The *ter* Verbs are used to indicate one, or any of the following purposes:

1. That the action is done accidentally;
2. Capability in the act;
3. A completed action.

Examples of Verbs indicating accidental actions:

*Johari hendak menyepak bola, tersepak batu.*

Johari wanted to kick the ball, he kicked a stone accidentally instead.

*Lembu itu terminum racun.*

The cow drank poison. (by accident)

*Saya terlupa membawa anak kunci laci.*

I forgot to bring the drawer key. (not purposely)

*Dia terpijak anak itik.*

He stepped on a duckling. (accidentally)

*Seekor kambing telah terjatuh ke dalam sebuah telaga.*

A goat has fallen (accidentally) into a well.

Examples of Verbs indicating capability of doing an act. These sentences are more often used in the negative:

*Saya tak terangkat meja itu sebab (ia) terlampau berat.*  
I cannot lift (am unable to lift) the table because it is too heavy.

*Dia tak terpanjat pokok kelapa itu.*  
He cannot climb (is unable to climb) the coconut tree.

*Budak itu tak terajar kerana (dia) terlampau bodoh.*  
The boy is unteachable because he is too stupid.

*Kerbau itu terlampau liar; tak tertangkap.*  
The buffalo is too wild; I can't (am unable to) catch it.

Examples of Verbs indicating completed action:

*Lampu itu terletak di atas meja.*  
The lamp is placed on the table.

*Buku itu terkarang dalam tahun 1975.*  
The book was written in 1975.

*Dia terdiam apabila dia nampak saya.*  
He became silent when he saw me.

*Dia tidak dapat menjerit kerana mulutnya tersumbat.*  
He could not shout because his mouth was gagged.

As explained earlier, a few *ter* Verbs can be used for more than one purpose. Observe the following sentences:

*Saya hendak menulis nama saya tetapi tertulis nama dia.* (accidental)



I wanted to write my name but I wrote his name instead.

*Namanya tertulis pada kulit buku itu.* (completed action)  
His name is written on the cover of the book.

*Saya tidak tertulis nama murid-murid sekolah ini kerana sangat ramai.* (capability)  
I am not able to write the names of pupils of this school because there are so many.

If the prefix *ter* is used with a reduplicated Verb; it denotes that the action is done without specific purpose. Observe the following examples:

*Dia tergaru-garu macam monyet.*  
He scratches like a monkey.

*Saya nampak budak itu terdiri-diri di situ hampir sejam lamanya.*

I saw the boy standing (aimlessly) there for almost an hour.

*Perempuan itu terkejar-kejar ke sana ke mari seperti orang gila.*

The woman ran here and there like a lunatic.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*dinding*, wall

*hutang*, debt

*racun*, poison

*papan kekunci*, keyboard

*tangan*, hands

*kaki*, legs

*telaga*, well

*saiz*, size

### Verbs

*bergerak*, to move

*terbenam*, sunk

*menjerit*, to shout  
*sumbat*, to gag

*tolak*, to push  
*ubah*, to shift; to move

### Miscellaneous

*agakny*a, perhaps  
*baiklah*, alright  
*begitu*, so

*kerana*, because  
*pun*, also  
*halus*, fine

### Conversation

*Lina:* *Aduh! Aduh! (cry of pain)*

*Makcik:* *Mengapa, Lina?*

*Lina:* *Saya **tersepak** batu, Makcik.*

*Makcik:* *Kau tak nampakkah batu itu?*

*Lina:* *Tak nampak, Makcik.*

*Makcik:* *Ubah batu itu!*

*Lina:* *Baiklah Makcik...Berat, Makcik! Saya tak **terangkat**.*

*Makcik:* *Tolaklah!*

*Lina:* *Saya dah cuba tolak, Makcik, tapi tak **tertolak**.*

*Makcik:* *Agaknya batu itu dah **terbenam** di dalam tanah.*

*Lina:* *Saya pun berfikir begitu, Makcik.*

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Malaysia. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise. (There should be one Class IV Verb in every sentence):

1. The National Sports Complex is situated in Bukit Jalil, Kuala Lumpur.
2. The diskettes are arranged on the rack.

3. The keyboard is placed on the computer table.
4. I took John's personal file. (by accident)
5. Three posters are hung on the wall.
6. The lecturer can't read the assignment because the size of the font is too small.
7. We are unable to chase the drug addict.
8. The gambler is unable to pay his debt.
9. When we went into the laboratory, we saw the lights on.
10. The hostage cannot move because his hands and legs are tied up.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Kompleks Sukan Negara terletak di Bukit Jalil, Kuala Lumpur.*
2. *Disket-disket tersusun di atas rak.*
3. *Papan kekunci itu terletak di atas meja komputer.*
4. *Saya terambil fail peribadi John.*
5. *Tiga keping poster tergantung di dinding itu.*
6. *Pensyarah tidak terbaca tugas itu kerana saiz fon perkataan-perkataan terlampau kecil.*
7. *Kami tidak terkejar penagih dadah itu.*
8. *Kaki judi itu tidak terbayar hutangnya.*
9. *Bila kami masuk makmal, kami ternampak lampu-lampu terpasang.*
10. *Orang tahanan itu tidak dapat bergerak kerana tangan dan kakinya terikat.*

## LESSON 22

### VERBS

#### (Class V Verbs: me....kan)

The fifth type of Verb contains the prefix *me* and the suffix *kan*. These Verbs are formed from certain Class I Verbs and from other parts of speech such as Nouns, Adjectives or Adverbs. They are entirely transitive.

Examples of Class V Verbs formed from Class I Verbs:

#### Class I

*tinggal* (to live)

*mandi* (to bathe)

*balik* (to return)

*sampai* (to arrive)

*keluar* (to go out)

*duduk* (to sit)

*datang* (to come)

*masuk* (to enter)

#### Class V

*meninggalkan* (to leave)

*memandikan* (to bathe someone)

*membalikkan* (to return something)

*menyampaikan* (to convey)

*mengeluarkan* (to take something out, to withdraw)

*mendudukkan* (to make someone sit)

*m mendatangkan* (to bring forth)

*memasukkan* (to deposit; to make something go in)

*naik* (to go up)  
*turun* (to go down)

*menaikkan* (to raise)  
*menurunkan* (to lower)

Examples of Verbs which are formed from Nouns:

**Nouns**

*hujan* (rain)  
  
*jalan* (road)  
*cermin* (mirror)  
*payung* (umbrella)  
  
*gambar* (picture)  
  
*buku* (book)  
  
*asap* (smoke)  
*pengerasi* (chairman)  
*susu* (milk)

**Verbs**

*menghujankan* (to expose,  
to rain)  
*menjalankan* (to drive)  
*mencerminkan* (to reflect)  
*memayungkan* (to hold an  
umbrella over someone)  
*menggambarkan* (to  
portray)  
*membukukan* (to form into a  
book)  
*mengasapkan* (to smoke)  
*mempengerusikan* (to chair)  
*menyusukan* (to feed with  
milk)

Examples of Verbs which are formed from Adjectives:

**Adjectives**

*panjang* (long)  
  
*pendek* (short)  
*bersih* (clean)  
*hitam* (black)  
*terang* (bright)  
*gemuk* (fat)  
*lurus* (straight)  
*besar* (large)  
*jauh* (far)

**Verbs**

*memanjangkan* (to lengthen;  
to forward; to pass on)  
*memendekkan* (to shorten)  
*membersihkan* (to clean)  
*menghitamkan* (to blacken)  
*menerangkan* (to brighten)  
*menggemukkan* (to fatten)  
*meluruskan* (to straighten)  
*membesarkan* (to enlarge)  
*menjauhkan* (to avoid; to  
keep away)

<i>kosong</i> (empty)	<i>mengosongkan</i> (to empty; to vacate)
<i>tenang</i> (calm)	<i>menenangkan</i> (to pacify)

Examples of Verbs which are formed from Adverbs:

<b>Adverbs</b>	<b>Verbs</b>
<i>segera</i> (immediately)	<i>menyegerakan</i> (to expedite)
<i>lambat</i> (late)	<i>melambatkan</i> (to delay)
<i>dahulu</i> (before; earlier)	<i>mendahulukan</i> (to put before)
<i>sudah</i> (already)	<i>menyudahkan</i> (to complete; to finish)
<i>kemudian</i> (later)	<i>mengemudiankan</i> (to put later)

Examples in sentences:

*Dia **meninggalkan** anak-anaknya di rumah.*  
He (She) leaves his (her) children at home.

*Ketua murid sedang **menaikkan** bendera Kebangsaan.*  
The head boy is raising the National flag.

*Dewan Bahasa dan Pustaka telah **membukukan** cerpen-cerpen pilihan tahun ini.*  
Dewan Bahasa and Pustaka has compiled this year's selected short stories.

*Encik Ramli **mempengerusikan** mesyuarat itu semalam.*  
Encik Ramli chaired the meeting yesterday.

*Zaitun **membersihkan** rumahnya tiap-tiap hari.*  
Zaitun cleans her house every day.

*Saya hendak **membesarkan** gambar ini.*  
I want to enlarge this picture.

*Pekerja-pekerja Jabatan Kerja Raya sedang **meluruskan** jalan itu.*

Labourers of the Public Works Department are straightening the road.

*Dia **menerangkan** mengapa dia gagal.*

He explained why he failed.

*Mereka sengaja **melambatkan** kerja itu.*

They purposely delayed the work.

**Note:** If two or more Class V Verbs are used successively, only the last Verb takes the suffix *kan*. Examples:

*Puan Salmah **menjerang** air sebelum memandi dan **menyusukan** anaknya.*

Puan Salmah boils water before she bathes and feeds (with milk) her child.

*Pekerja-pekerja J.K.R. sedang **melebar** dan **memanjangkan** jalan itu.*

J.K.R. workers are widening and lengthening the road.

**Note:** If the sentence is in the Imperative, the prefix *me* is dropped. Examples:

***Padamkan** lampu itu.*

Switch off the light.

***Jangan bangunkan** dia.*

Don't wake him up.

*Tolong **ajarkan** anak saya Bahasa Melayu.*

Please teach my child Bahasa Melayu.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*barang-barang*, goods

*lembaga*, board

*berita*, news

*buaian*, cradle

*cerpen*, short story

*harga*, price

*harta*, property

*jururawat*, nurse

*kuman*, germ

*rancangan*, project

*sawah*, rice-field

*sungutan*, complaint

*beg*, bag

*bendera*, flag

*mesyuarat*, meeting

*nyamuk*, mosquito

*pekedai*, shopkeeper

*penduduk*, inhabitant

*pengerusi*, chairman

*keputusan*, resolution,  
result

*kerajaan*, government

*ketua murid*, headboy

### Miscellaneous

*gagal*, failed

*penting*, important

*sihat*, healthy; in good health

*tentang*, about

*mengenai*, about;  
concerning

### Conversation

S: Siapa **menpengerusikan** mesyuarat itu semalam?

J: Encik Musa, sebab Encik Mahathir tidak sihat.

S: Apakah antara keputusan-keputusan mesyuarat itu?

J: Antara keputusan-keputusannya ialah Persatuan hendak meminta kerajaan **membesar** dan **meluruskan** jalan ke sekolah itu.

S: Bagaimana tentang sungutan penduduk mengenai nyamuk yang banyak itu?

J: Tuan Pengerusi **menyatakan** Persatuan akan mengambil langkah untuk **menghapuskan** nyamuk dan **menjauhkan** penyakit.



*S: Eloklah tu, tetapi dapatkah Lembaga menjalankan rancangan-rancangan itu?*

*J: Kita harap dapat tetapi Lembaga akan mendahulukan rancangan yang lebih penting dan mengemudikan yang kurang penting.*

### Exercise

Use the words in the three columns to form ten correct sentences:

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
<i>Cik Laila</i>	<i>memandikan</i>	<i>berita kepadanya.</i>
<i>Keretapi mel pagi</i>	<i>mengeluarkan</i>	<i>orang tua itu di atas kerusi.</i>
<i>Hayati</i>	<i>menaipkan</i>	<i>penyakit.</i>
<i>Saya hendak</i>	<i>mendudukkan</i>	<i>anaknyanya di atas katil.</i>
<i>Pokok getah itu</i>	<i>menurunkan</i>	<i>kucingnya dengan</i>
<i>Jururawat</i>	<i>memasukkan</i>	<i>menggunakan sabun.</i>
<i>Kuman</i>	<i>menidurkan</i>	<i>stesen Kuala Lumpur pada</i>
<i>Ada pekedai-pekedai</i>	<i>menyampaikan</i>	<i>pukul 9.00.</i>
<i>Pesawah itu</i>	<i>meninggalkan</i>	<i>susu getah yang banyak.</i>
<i>Pasukan yang kalah</i>	<i>mendatangkan</i>	<i>benderanya.</i>
<i>telah</i>		<i>harga barang-barangnya.</i>
		<i>air ke sawahnya.</i>

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. Computer simplifies our work.
2. Let's give our moral support to our teams; hopefully that would enliven the Commonwealth Games.
3. The Malaysian badminton players carried their coach after they succeeded in defeating England.
4. They asked the disc jockey to play an old song.
5. The scouts are not allowed to use the tent.
6. Sharifah wants to return the novel to the teacher.

7. My mother puts my younger sister to sleep in a cradle.
8. The old man left behind a lot of property.
9. Shopkeepers raise the prices of their goods.
10. She wants to convey this news to him.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Komputer memudahkan kerja kita.*
2. *Marilah kita memberi sokongan moral kepada pasukan-pasukan kita semoga ianya memeriahkan lagi Sukan Komanwel.*
3. *Para pemain badminton Malaysia menjulang jurulatih mereka setelah berjaya mengalahkan England.*
4. *Mereka menyuruh pemain cakera memainkan sebuah lagu lama.*
5. *Pengakap-pengakap tidak dibenarkan menggunakan khemah itu.*
6. *Sharifah hendak memulangkan novel itu kepada guru.*
7. *Emak saya menidurkan adik saya di dalam buaian.*
8. *Orang tua itu meninggalkan banyak harta.*
9. *Pekedai-pekedai menaikkan harga barang-barang.*
10. *Dia hendak menyampaikan berita ini kepadanya.*

## LESSON 23

### VERBS

#### (Class IV Verbs: *me...i*)

Class IV Verbs take in the prefix *me* and the suffix *i*. Like Class V Verbs, they are formed from certain Class I Verbs and from other parts of speech. These Verbs are also transitive. However, it should be borne in mind that not all Class I Verbs that can take *me...kan*, can also take *me...i*, and vice versa.

Examples of Class VI Verbs formed from Class I Verbs:

#### Class I

*duduk* (to sit)  
*naik* (to go up)  
*turun* (to go down)  
*keluar* (to go out)  
*masuk* (to enter)  
*tidur* (to sleep)  
*diam* (to live)

#### Class VI

*menduduki* (to occupy)  
*menaiki* (to ride)  
*menuruni* (to descend)  
*mengeluari* (to drive out)  
*memasuki* (to join; to enrol)  
*meniduri* (to sleep upon)  
*mendiami* (to dwell)

Examples of Verbs which are formed from Nouns:

#### Nouns

*jalan* (road)

#### Verbs

*menjalani* (to travel; to undergo)

<i>payung</i> (umbrella)	<i>memayungi</i> (to hold an umbrella over someone)
<i>perang</i> (war)	<i>memerangi</i> (to fight out)
<i>kasih</i> (love)	<i>mengasih</i> (to love)
<i>noda</i> (dirt)	<i>menodai</i> (to smear)
<i>teman</i> (friend)	<i>menemani</i> (to accompany)
<i>nikmat</i> (joy; pleasure)	<i>menikmati</i> (to enjoy)

Examples of Verbs which are formed from Adjectives:

<b>Adjectives</b>	<b>Verbs</b>
<i>terang</i> (bright)	<i>menerangi</i> (to brighten)
<i>jauh</i> (far)	<i>menjauhi</i> (to keep off)
<i>menang</i> (victorious)	<i>memenangi</i> (to win over)
<i>rapat</i> (close)	<i>merapati</i> (to get close)
<i>dekat</i> (near)	<i>mendekati</i> (to get near)
<i>tepat</i> (to the point)	<i>menepati</i> (to keep promise, time, etc)
<i>sedar</i> (conscious)	<i>menyedari</i> (to be aware; to realise)
<i>patuh</i> (obedient)	<i>mematuhi</i> (to obey)

A few words can take in both *me...kan* and *me...i*, but each conveys a different meaning, of course. Read the following sentences and see the difference in meanings:

- Ismail **menaikkan** tangga.*  
*Ismail **menaiki** tangga*
- Puan Zaitun **menidurkan** anaknya.*  
*Puan Zaitun **meniduri** tilam baru.*
- Anjing itu **merenangkan** tali ke seberang sana.*  
*Anjing itu **merenangi** sungai itu.*
- Dia cuba **menghubungkan** tali itu.*  
*Saya **menghubungi** dia dengan telefon bimbit.*

- e. *Saya mendekatkan dua buah pasu bunga itu.*  
*Saya mendekati orang sakit itu.*

The translation of the above sentences are as follows:

- a. Ismail is raising (putting up) the ladder.  
Ismail is going up the ladder or stairs.
- b. Puan Zaitun is putting the child to sleep.  
Puan Zaitun sleeps on a new mattress.
- c. The dog took the rope along while swimming across there.  
The dog is swimming in the river.
- d. He tried to join the ropes.  
I contacted him with a mobile phone.
- e. I put the two flower pots close to each other.  
I went near the sick man. (I approached the sick man).

From the above examples, you might have noticed that all the Verbs are transitive, i.e. they have objects. The difference is that the object in the first sentence in each pair experiences a *shake-up* or *movement*; whereas the object in the second sentence is *static*!

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*dewan*, hall

*inflasi*, inflation

*enjin*, engine

*jasa*, deed

*kalung bunga*, wreath

*kelab*, club

*ketua murid*, headboy

*pengakap*, scout

*penyelia*, supervisor

*peperiksaan*, examination

*peraturan*, rules

*komponen*, component

*kesilapan*, error, mistake

*kursus*, course

*tali*, ropes  
*pasu bunga*, flower pot  
*warna*, colour  
*upacara*, ceremony

*pahlawan*, hero  
*pasukan*, troop, team  
*tilam*, mattress.

## Miscellaneous

*bersama-sama*, together  
*seorang diri*, single-handed; alone  
*pelbagai*, multi; varied

## Exercise

Fill in the blanks with the correct words in the brackets:

1. *Lampu-lampu pelbagai warna \_\_\_\_\_ dewan karaoke itu. (menerangi, menerangkan)*
2. *Sekarang dia telah \_\_\_\_\_ kesilapannya. (menyedarkan, menyedari)*
3. *Dia sudah tahu \_\_\_\_\_ enjin itu. (menjalankan, menjalani)*
4. *Ketua murid \_\_\_\_\_ bendera tiap-tiap pagi. (menaiki, menaikkan)*
5. *Dalam peperiksaan yang lepas, Sally \_\_\_\_\_ kawan-kawannya yang lain. (mengataskan, mengatasi)*
6. *Mereka telah \_\_\_\_\_ pulau itu sejak kurun ke-19. (mendiami, mendiamkan)*
7. *Abang saya telah \_\_\_\_\_ pasukan Pengakap sekolahnya. (mengetuai, mengetuakan)*
8. *Pasukan sukan kelab kami telah \_\_\_\_\_ lima buah piala. (memenangkan, memenangi)*
9. *Upacara meletakkan kalung bunga di Tugu Kebangsaan semalam ialah untuk \_\_\_\_\_ jasa pahlawan-pahlawan kita. (mengingatikan, mengingat)*
10. *Jururawat itu cuba \_\_\_\_\_ orang sakit itu. (mendudukkan, menduduki)*

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. We descended Mount Everest together.
2. My father held an umbrella over my head.
3. He realised his error when he reached home.
4. The duty of the supervisor is to observe the factory workers fixing the computer components.
5. Everyone must fight inflation.
6. He joined the police force last month.
7. My elder brother is undergoing a course in Computer Science.
8. My mother accompanied me to school.
9. All students must obey school rules.
10. We enjoyed the closing ceremony of the 16th Commonwealth Games last night.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Kami menuruni Gunung Everest bersama-sama.*
2. *Bapa saya memayungi saya.*
3. *Dia menyedari kesilapannya ketika dia sampai di rumah.*
4. *Tugas penyelia adalah untuk mengawasi pekerja-pekerja kilang yang sedang memasang komponen-komponen komputer.*
5. *Tiap-tiap orang mesti memerangi inflasi.*
6. *Dia memasuki pasukan polis bulan lepas.*
7. *Abang saya menjalani kursus Sains Komputer.*
8. *Emak saya menemani saya ke sekolah.*
9. *Semua penuntut mesti mematuhi peraturan-peraturan sekolah.*

10. *Kami menikmati upacara penutup Sukan Komanwel ke-16 malam tadi.*



## LESSON 24

### VERBS

#### (Active and Passive Voice)

As in English, a declarative sentence can be expressed in two ways; in the Active Voice and in the Passive Voice. A sentence in the Active Voice can be turned into the Passive Voice, and vice versa.

Read the following sentences:

- a. *Kucing makan ikan.*  
The cat ate the fish. (Active)  
*Ikan dimakan kucing.*  
The fish was eaten by the cat. (Passive)
- b. *Polis telah menangkap dua orang pencuri.*  
The police have arrested two thieves. (Active)  
*Dua orang pencuri telah ditangkap polis.*  
Two thieves have been arrested by the police. (Passive)
- c. *Kapal terbang negara Iraq menenggelamkan kapal perang "Enterprise" Amerika Syarikat dengan menggugurkan bom.*  
Iraqi planes sank the American warship "Enterprise" by dropping bombs. (Active)

*Kapal perang "Enterprise" Amerika Syarikat ditenggelamkan oleh pengguguran bom dari kapal terbang Iraq semasa Perang Teluk.*

The American warship "Enterprise" was sunk by the dropping of bombs by Iraqi planes during the Gulf War. (Passive)

- d. *Salji tebal meliputi kemuncak Gunung Everest.*

Thick snow covers the summit of Mount Everest. (Active)

*Kemuncak Gunung Everest diliputi salji tebal.*

The summit of Mount Everest is covered by thick snow. (Passive)

You must have observed that sentences with the following Classes of Verbs can be turned from Active to Passive:

- a. Class II Verbs (without *me*). Example, *makan, pergi*.
- b. Class II Verbs (with *me*). Example, *menangkap, meningkat*.
- c. Class V Verbs (with *me...kan*). Example, *menelankan, menenggelamkan*.
- d. Class VI Verbs (with *me...i*). Example, *meliputi, melengkapi*.

And in the case of (c), the word *oleh* (by) is placed after the Verb to make the sentence more readable.

**Note:** In conversation, the word *oleh* is often substituted by *dek*.

To make the change, you must drop the prefix *me* and put *di* in its place. The Object is then transferred and placed before the Verb. You will find this a rather simple process.

If you want to turn the Passive into the Active, the process is reversed, that is, drop the *di*, and put in *me* and the object becomes the subject.

Now, study the following sentences:

**Passive**

*Banglonya dimasuki pencuri.*  
His bungalow was burgled  
(entered by thieves).

*Susu di dalam piring itu  
dijilat kucing.*  
The milk in the saucer was  
licked by the cat.

*Raja yang adil dikasihi  
rakyat.*  
A just ruler is loved by the  
people.

*Bilik itu dibersihkan oleh  
pembantu rumah.*  
The room is cleaned by the  
maid.

*Anak-anak ikan dilepaskan  
ke dalam tasik oleh  
nelayan itu.*  
Fish fries were released into  
the lake by the fisherman.

*Bangunan itu sedang dihiasi  
oleh sepuluh orang  
sukarelawan.*

**Active**

*Pencuri memasuki banglonya.*  
Thieves broke into his  
bungalow.

*Kucing menjilat susu di  
dalam piring itu.*  
The cat licked the milk in the  
saucer.

*Rakyat mengasihi raja yang  
adil.*  
The people love a just king.

*Pembantu rumah  
membersihkan bilik itu.*  
The maid cleaned the room.

*Nelayan itu melepaskan  
anak-anak ikan ke dalam  
tasik itu.*  
The fisherman released fish  
fries into the lake.

*Sepuluh orang sukarelawan  
sedang menghiasi bangunan  
itu.*

The building is being decorated  
by ten volunteers.

Ten volunteers are decorating  
the building.

There are other ways of forming sentences in the Passive Voice: by using the prefixes *ber* and *ter*. In this case, the doer, as in English can be left out. Examples:

*Buku itu sudah berjilid.*  
The book has been bound.

*Buah nanas itu sudah berkulup.*  
The pineapples have been skinned.

*Telefon terletak di atas meja.*  
The telephone is on the table.

*Wang emas itu tersembunyi di dalam gua.*  
The gold coins are hidden in the cave.

*Pasukan hoki kami telah ditewaskan.*  
Our hockey team has been defeated.

*Lagu baru itu sangat diminati.*  
The new song is very much liked.

We can also use the word *kena* to denote Passive Voice by placing it before the Verbs (the prefix *me* must be dropped). Examples:

*Budak jahat itu kena pukul.*  
The naughty boy was beaten.

*Kambingnya kena langgar.*  
His goat was knocked down.

*Bandar itu kena bom dua kali.*  
The city was bombed twice.

*Pengurus bank itu kena samun.*  
The bank manager was robbed:

*Radio keretanya kena curi.*  
His car radio was stolen.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

<i>ahli</i> , member	<i>negara</i> , state, country
<i>bakat</i> , talent	<i>pasukan bomba</i> , fire brigade
<i>lagu</i> , song	<i>perajurit</i> , soldiers
<i>balak</i> , timber	<i>pengerusi</i> , chairman
<i>bandar</i> , city	<i>perbelanjaan</i> , expenses
<i>hartawan</i> , the wealthy	<i>perbualan</i> , talk; conversation
<i>ibu bapa</i> , parents	<i>rakyat</i> , people; citizens; subjects
<i>kesukaran</i> , hardship	<i>kimia</i> , chemistry
<i>jalan</i> , road	<i>syarikat</i> , company
<i>undang-undang</i> , law	<i>tiang</i> , post
<i>jenis</i> , kind	
<i>kawasan</i> , area; compound	
<i>kemerdekaan</i> , independence	

### Miscellaneous

<i>pelbagai</i> , many kinds; all sorts
<i>sebagai</i> , as
<i>hadir</i> , present
<i>segala</i> , all
<i>sementara</i> , temporary
<i>ramai</i> , all, public

### Exercise

Do the following exercises, and then check with the correct answers after that:

- a. Change the following sentences into the Passive:
1. *Lima orang hartawan telah menubuhkan sebuah syarikat.*
  2. *Australia banyak mengimpot balak dari negara ini.*
  3. *Tunku Abdul Rahman mengisytiharkan kemerdekaan negara kita pada 31hb. Ogos, 1957.*
  4. *Pelbagai kenderaan memenuhi jalan dan lorong di bandar itu.*
  5. *Kerajaan menanggung segala perbelanjaannya.*
  6. *Penduduk-penduduk desa itu menebang pokok-pokok kelapa di tepi jalan itu.*
  7. *Dekan mencalonkan dia sebagai wakil mereka.*
  8. *Kadang-kadang kanak-kanak mewarisi bakat ibu bapa mereka.*
  9. *Portugis mengalahkan Melaka dalam tahun 1511.*
  10. *Perajurit kita mengalami pelbagai kesukaran.*
- b. Change the following sentences into the Active:
1. *Seluruh kawasan itu dibanjiri air.*
  2. *Api itu telah dipadamkan oleh pasukan bomba.*
  3. *Lagu "Isabella" diminati ramai.*
  4. *Bahasa Inggeris digunakan mereka dalam perbualan.*
  5. *Buku kimia itu diterjemahkan oleh En. Bustaman.*
  6. *Dia telah dilantik oleh ahli-ahli yang hadir menjadi pengerusi sementara.*
  7. *Tali itu diregangnya dari tiang ini ke tiang itu.*
  8. *Surat itu ditaip oleh Aminah.*
  9. *Banyak kondominium baru didirikan oleh pemaju itu.*
  10. *Semua rakyat dilindungi oleh undang-undang negara.*

Now check your answers with those below:

(a)

1. *Sebuah syarikat telah ditubuhkan oleh lima orang hartawan.*
2. *Kayu balak negara ini banyak diimpot oleh Australia.*
3. *Kemerdekaan negara kita diisytiharkan oleh Tunku Abdul Rahman pada 31hb. Ogos, 1957.*
4. *Jalan dan lorong di bandar itu dipenuhi oleh pelbagai kenderaan.*
5. *Segala perbelanjaannya ditanggung oleh kerajaan.*
6. *Pokok-pokok kelapa di tepi jalan itu ditebang oleh penduduk-penduduk desa itu.*
7. *Dia dicalunkan oleh Dekan sebagai wakil mereka.*
8. *Kadang-kadang bakat ibu bapa diwarisi oleh kanak-kanak mereka.*
9. *Melaka dikalahkan (oleh) Portugis dalam tahun 1511.*
10. *Pelbagai kesukaran dialami oleh perajurit kita.*

(b)

1. *Air membanjiri seluruh kawasan itu.*
2. *Pasukan bomba telah memadamkan api itu.*
3. *Ramai meminati lagu "Isabella".*
4. *Mereka menggunakan Bahasa Inggeris dalam perbualan.*
5. *En. Bustaman menterjemahkan buku kimia itu.*
6. *Ahli-ahli yang hadir telah melantik dia menjadi pengerusi sementara.*
7. *Dia meregangkan tali itu dari tiang ini ke tiang itu.*
8. *Aminah menaip surat itu.*
9. *Pemaju itu mendirikan banyak kondominium baru.*
10. *Undang-undang negara melindungi semua rakyat.*

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. Hari Raya Puasa is celebrated on the first day of the month of Syawal.
2. A wild elephant was knocked down by the train.
3. The picture was shown to everybody.
4. The maize plants were eaten by cows.
5. The big trees were cut down with a chain-saw.
6. The snakes are kept in a basket.
7. War was declared by the Prime Minister.
8. The course is conducted by the Union.
9. Dirty clothes are washed and dried in the machines.
10. The Computer Fair in KOMTAR, Penang was officiated by the Minister of Education.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Hari Raya Puasa dirayakan pada hari pertama bulan Syawal.*
2. *Seekor gajah liar dilanggar oleh keretapi.*
3. *Gambar itu ditunjukkan kepada tiap-tiap orang.*
4. *Pokok-pokok jagung itu dimakan lembu.*
5. *Pokok-pokok besar itu ditebang dengan gergaji rantai.*
6. *Ular-ular itu disimpan di dalam bakul.*
7. *Perang diisytiharkan oleh Perdana Menteri.*
8. *Kursus itu diuruskan oleh Kesatuan.*
9. *Kain-kain kotor dibasuh dan dikeringkan di dalam mesin itu.*
10. *Pesta Komputer di KOMTAR, Penang itu dirasmikan oleh Menteri Pendidikan.*



### VERBS

#### (Tenses of Verbs [2])

In Lesson 17, you have learnt that tenses in Bahasa Melayu are understood from the context. However, if you want to be specific, you can use certain words in your sentences to indicate the various tenses. Study the following sentences:

- a. *Dia menulis surat.*  
He writes a letter. (Present Tense)
- b. *Dia menulis surat malam tadi.*  
He wrote a letter last night. (Past Tense)
- c. *Dia sedang menulis surat.*  
He is writing a letter. (Present Continuous Tense)
- d. *Dia sedang menulis surat ketika saya datang.*  
He was writing a letter when I came. (Past Continuous Tense)
- e. *Dia telah menulis surat.*  
He has written a letter. (Present Perfect Tense)
- f. *Dia memberitahu saya dia telah menulis surat itu.*  
He told me he had written the letter. (Past Perfect Tense)

You will notice that the same word *menulis* is used for sentences (a) and (b), but you know that sentence (b) is in the Past Tense because the time-word *malam tadi* tells you so.

To indicate the Continuous Tense, the word *sedang* is placed before the Verb, as shown in sentences (c) and (d). You can tell that sentence (d) is in the Past Continuous Tense because the phrase *ketika saya datang* gives you a clear indication that the action has taken place. The word *tengah* can also be used in place of *sedang*, though *sedang* is a better word to use.

To indicate the Present Perfect Tense and the Past Perfect Tense, the word *telah* is placed before the Verb. Instead of *telah*, the word *sudah* can be used. The latter word also gives a sense of *already*.

Other examples of Past Perfect Tense:

*Saya tahu dia **telah lulus** peperiksaannya.*

I knew that he had passed his exam.

*Dia memberitahu saya bapanya **telah belayar** ke Mekah.*

He told me that his father had sailed for Mecca.

*Polis menyatakan penyamun-penyamun itu **telah tertangkap**.*

The police stated that the robbers had been arrested.

Other examples of Past Continuous Tense:

*Ketika saya sampai, dia **sedang menyiram** bunga.*

When I arrived, she was watering the flowers.

*Waktu kapal terbang itu mendarat, hujan **sedang turun** dengan lebatnya.*

When the aeroplane landed, it was raining heavily.

The word *sedang* could be placed at the beginning of a sentence to make it more effective, as in the following examples:

*Sedang kami berjalan-jalan di pantai Batu Feringgi, kami terdengar orang menjerit.*

While strolling along the Batu Feringgi beach, we heard a cry.

*Sedang dia menyapu sampah, sebuah kereta berhenti di hadapan rumahnya.*

While sweeping (litter), a car stopped in front of her house.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*misai*, moustache

*perubahan*, change

*peperiksaan*, examination

*kaki*, leg

*soalan*, question

*mangga*, mango

*masa*, time

*pelancong*, tourist

*penyamun*, robber

*polis*, police

*sampah*, litter; rubbish

*ladang*, estate

*tiket*, ticket

### Verbs

*belayar*, to sail

*dilaksanakan*, to implement,  
to carry out

*bertolak*, to leave, to depart

*menunjukkan*, to show

*memeluk*, to embrace

*menggunakan*, to use

*mendarat*, to land

*menyiram*, to water

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

Read the following passage, and make sure you understand the meanings of all the words:

## “Smart School”

*Zaman yang bergantung semata-mata kepada guru dan buku teks telah berlalu meninggalkan kita. Pembelajaran dan pengajaran bukan lagi sekadar menggunakan kapur dan papan hitam, tetapi juga ke tahap kemahiran menggunakan teknologi terkini seperti komputer di dalam bilik darjah.*

*Di Amerika Syarikat ada elemen-elemen “Smart School” yang sedang dilaksanakan di banyak sekolah di negara itu. Semuanya dilaporkan telah menunjukkan perubahan positif. “Smart School” merupakan manifestasi bagaimana pembelajaran, pengajaran dan pengurusan sekolah seharusnya dilaksanakan dengan berlandaskan berfikir dan teknologi.*

*“Smart School” menghasilkan pembelajaran yang bermakna dengan mempertingkatkan segala potensi yang ada pada pelajar secara cekap, ekonomis dan berkesan melalui penggunaan daya fikir, pengetahuan, kemahiran dan teknologi. Oleh demikian, pendidikan era ini dan cabaran masa hadapan memerlukan “Smart School” sebagai wadah ke arah pencapaiannya.*

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. My friend, Sam, goes to the office by light rail transport. (LRT)
2. I have answered all his questions.
3. The tourist visited the National Zoo and the Petronas Twin Towers
4. My father is shaving his moustache.
5. Encik Amin was planting mango trees when I came.
6. He had bought a ticket before the commuter arrived.
7. A dog bit his leg.

8. He had written the book before he left for Australia.
9. The carpenters make 100 chairs in one day.
10. Rosli is reading the newspaper, his wife is sewing a shirt.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Kawan saya, Sam, pergi ke pejabat dengan transit aliran ringan.*
2. *Saya telah menjawab semua soalnya.*
3. *Pelancong-pelancong itu melawat Zoo Negara dan Menara Berkembar Petronas.*
4. *Bapa saya sedang mencukur misainya.*
5. *Encik Amin sedang menanam pokok mangga ketika saya datang.*
6. *Dia telah membeli tiket sebelum komuter sampai.*
7. *Anjing menggigit kakinya.*
8. *Dia telah menulis (mengarang) buku itu sebelum bertolak ke Australia.*
9. *Tukang-tukang kayu membuat 100 buah kerusi dalam sehari.*
10. *Rosli sedang membaca suratkhobar, isterinya sedang menjahit kemeja.*

### VERBS

#### (Auxiliary Verbs)

In Bahasa Melayu, there are a few words which are considered as Auxiliary Verbs. These Verbs are used together with the Principal Verb in order to give more meaning to it. An Auxiliary Verb is always placed before a Principal Verb.

Among the most commonly used Auxiliary Verbs are: *boleh, telah, patut, mesti, wajib, harus, mungkin, ada, jadi, hendak, suka, kena.*

Study the following sentences, and note the Principal Verbs:

- a. *Kini komputer **boleh** menjalankan berbagai-bagai fungsi.*  
Today, computers can do many different things.
- b. *Tiap-tiap kakitangan pejabat ini **telah** menderma kepada Tabung Pertahanan Negara.*  
Every staff of this office has donated to the National Defence Fund.
- c. *Orang kaya **patut** menolong orang miskin.*  
The rich should help the poor.
- d. *Saya **mesti** berada di Lapangan Terbang Antarabangsa Kuala Lumpur malam ini.*

I must be at the Kuala Lumpur International Airport tonight.

- e. *Tiap-tiap orang Islam yang akil baligh **wajib** berpuasa dalam bulan Ramadan, kecuali kerana sebab-sebab yang tertentu.*

Every Muslim, who has reached adulthood, is obliged to fast in the month of Ramadan except with certain reasons.

- f. *Rancangan itu **harus** dilaksanakan juga.*  
That project should also be implemented.

- g. *Langkah seperti ini **mungkin** menimbulkan kegelisahan orang-orang di kampung ini.*

Such a step might create unrest among the people in this village.

- h. *Dia **ada** datang malam itu.*  
He did come that night.

- i. *Saya **tak jadi** beli rumah itu sebab harganya mahal sangat.*

I didn't buy (it didn't materialise) that house because the price was too expensive.

- j. *Mereka **hendak** bertolak pagi esok.*  
They want to leave the next morning.

- k. *Saya **suka** makan buah-buahan tempatan.*  
I like to eat local fruit.

- l. *Tiap-tiap penuntut **kena** membayar RM10.00 sepenggal sebagai yuran sukan dan perpustakaan.*

Every student has to pay RM10.00 per term as sports and library fees.

**Note:** You must have noticed that the word *to* that precedes the Verbs *leave*, *eat*, and *pay* in sentences (j), (k) and (l) respectively is not rendered in Bahasa Melayu.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*komputer*, computer  
*cita-cita*, ambition  
*bidang*, field  
*zaman*, era  
*sains*, science  
*pelajar-pelajar*, students

*organisasi*, organisation  
*dunia*, world  
*maklumat*, information  
*galakan*, encouragement  
*pendidikan*, education

### Verbs

*digunakan*, to use  
*membantu*, to help  
*diasuh*, to take care of  
*bergerak*, to move

*berfungsi*, to function  
*mendapatkan*, to obtain  
*diberi*, to give

### Miscellaneous

*teknologi maklumat*, information technology  
*sains dan teknologi*, science and technology  
*dengan demikian*, by so doing  
*terkini*, up-to-date

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Kelebihan Mengguna Komputer*

*Sepuluh tahun yang lalu, kebanyakan daripada kita tidak perlu tahu apa itu komputer. Ini disebabkan komputer cuma digunakan oleh organisasi-organisasi besar. Kini kita terasa perlu*



*menggunakannya untuk berfungsi dengan baik di dalam dunia seharian.*

*Masa ini, semua pelajar-pelajar harus tahu mengguna komputer kerana ia boleh membantu dalam bidang pendidikan. Selain daripada itu, komputer boleh mendapatkan maklumat-maklumat yang terkini.*

*Tiap-tiap ibu bapa wajib mendidik anak-anak mereka supaya menjadi rakyat yang berilmu dan berguna kepada diri dan negara.*

*Dalam zaman sains dan teknologi ini, pelajar-pelajar patut diasuh dan diberi galakan supaya mereka dapat mencapai cita-cita mereka dengan menggunakan teknologi maklumat yang terkini. Dengan demikian dapatlah kita bergerak maju bersama-sama dengan negara-negara lain.*

### **Exercise**

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. The sale of food in the canteen should be monitored for the sake of the students' health.
2. Through the Internet, we can get the latest information.
3. Zero Inflation Day should be implemented on the first Saturday of every month.
4. The implementation of the one-session school might reduce social problems.
5. Open burning can cause haze.
6. The problem of loafing among youths should be overcome.
7. All students are obliged to learn the English Language because it is an international language for communication.
8. Industrial waste has polluted the environment.

9. The lack of facilities in the countryside has resulted in the migration of villagers to town.
10. The tourists wanted to go to Pulau Langkawi.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Penjualan makanan di kantin harus diawasi demi kesihatan para pelajar.*
2. *Melalui Internet, kita boleh mendapat maklumat-maklumat yang terkini.*
3. *Hari inflasi sifar patut dilaksanakan setiap hari Sabtu pertama setiap bulan.*
4. *Pelaksanaan persekolahan satu sesi mungkin mengurangkan masalah sosial.*
5. *Pembakaran terbuka boleh menyebabkan masalah jerebu.*
6. *Masalah lepak di kalangan pemuda-pemudi harus diatasi.*
7. *Semua pelajar wajib belajar Bahasa Inggeris kerana ia adalah bahasa perhubungan bertaraf antarabangsa.*
8. *Sisa buangan sektor industri telah mencemarkan alam sekitar.*
9. *Kekurangan kemudahan di desa telah menyebabkan penduduk desa berhijrah ke bandar.*
10. *Pelancong-pelancong itu hendak pergi ke Pulau Langkawi.*

## LESSON 27

### ADVERBS

#### (Adverbs of Manner)

A Bahasa Melayu Adverb modifies a Verb, an Adjective or another Adverb.

Study the following sentences:

- a. *Alto Bolden berlari pantas.*  
Alto Bolden runs **fast**.
- b. *Bunga orkid ini sungguh cantik.*  
This orchid (flower) is **truly** beautiful.
- c. *Bailey Donovan berlari sangat pantas.*  
Bailey Donovan runs **very** fast.

In sentence (a), the word *pantas* modifies the Verb *berlari*.

In sentence (b), the word *sungguh* modifies the Adjective *cantik*.

In sentence (c), the word *sangat* modifies the Adverb *pantas*.

Below are examples of Adverbs which are used mostly to modify Verbs:

- a. *Guru-guru itu sampai awal.*  
The teachers arrive **early**.
- b. *Sila jawab surat ini segera.*

Please reply this letter **immediately**.

- c. *Kalau dia bercakap **perlahan-lahan**, saya boleh faham.*  
If he speaks **slowly**, I can understand.
- d. *Berjalan **baik-baik**, jalan ini sibuk.*  
Walk **carefully**, this road is busy.
- e. *En. Murad ada di sini **tadi**.*  
En. Murad was here **just now**.
- f. ***Kadang-kadang** dia pergi ke pejabat dengan bas.*  
**Sometimes** he goes to office by bus.
- g. *Awak pergi **dahulu**, saya datang **kemudian**.*  
You go **ahead**, I'll come **later**.
- h. *Jangan datang **dekat**, api ini merebak.*  
Don't come **near**, the fire is spreading.
- i. ***Mengapa** dia menangis?*  
**Why** is he (she) crying?
- j. *Dia **tentu** lulus kali ini.*  
He (will) **certainly** pass this time.

You will notice that some Adverbs of Manner are formed by re-duplicating the Adjectives either fully or partially. See examples (c) and (d).

Below are examples of Adverbs which are used fully to modify Adjectives and other Adverbs.

- a. *Cuaca hari ini **sangat** panas.*  
The weather is **very** hot today.
- b. *Sungai Pahang **lebih** panjang daripada Sungai Perak.*  
The Pahang River is **longer** than the Perak River.

- c. *Bilik ini terlampau sejuk, saya tak tahan.*  
This room is **too** cold, I can't stand it.
- d. *Harga barang-barang di kedai itu mahal belaka.*  
The goods in that shop are **all** (without exception) expensive.

**Note:** Never use *banyak* for *very* because that would be bazaar Malay.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*besi*, iron  
*isteri*, wife  
*peraturan*, rules

*sate*, satay  
*stesen*, station

### Verbs

*berebut-rebut*, to rush; to  
struggle for something

*reda*, to abate  
*mengejar*, to chase

### Adjectives

*enak*, delicious  
*ramai*, many (of people)

*sakit*, sick  
*terang*, bright

### Adverbs

*awal*, early  
*cepat*, quick  
*cermat-cermat*, carefully  
*begini*, this way  
*begitu*, that way  
*dahulu*, before; ahead  
*dekat*, near

*pantas*, swift, fast  
*perlahan-lahan*, slowly  
*sangat*, very  
*sedikit*, a little  
*segera*, immediately  
*sebenarnya*, really  
*tadi*, just now

*kadang-kadang*, sometimes  
*kemudian*, later  
*lambat*, late

*terlampau*, too much  
*terlalu*, excessively

## Conversation

*Ibu:* *Hai(1) Limah(2)! Mengapa kau(3) lambat balik?*

*Anak:* *Susah nak dapat baslah(4), mak(5). Orang ramai sangat.*

*Ibu:* *Kau 'nunggu(6) di mana? Tidak di stesen?*

*Anak:* *Mah 'nunggu di stesenlah. Tapi(7), bila bas sampai saja(8), orang naik berebut-rebut. Orang tak mahu 'ngikut(9) peraturan.*

*Ibu:* *Jadi, 'gaimana(10) kau dapat naik?*

*Anak:* *Mah terpaksaalah 'nunggu(6) sampai orang dah reda. Mah naik bersama-sama Zainab.*

*Ibu:* *Tak apalah lambat(11) sikit. Biar lambat(12) asalkan selamat.*

### Note:

1. *Hai* is an exclamatory word indicating surprise.
2. *Limah* is short form of *Halimah*. It could be further shortened to *Mah*. This is done to practically all Malay names. Such abbreviated form could also be used as a sort of Personal Pronoun.
3. The word *kau* (you) is used by a superior to one inferior in status. It is shortened from *engkau*.
4. *lah* is a suffix, and used as a balanced word.
5. *mak* is a shortened form of *emak*.
6. *'nunggu* is shortened from *menunggu*. In conversation, the prefix *me* is often swallowed.
7. *tapi* is shortened from *tetapi*.
8. *saja* is another form of *sahaja*.

9. *'ngikut* is abbreviated from *sedikit*.
10. *'gaimana* is abbreviated from *bagaimana*.
11. *sikit* is abbreviated from *sedikit*.
12. This whole sentence is a maxim meaning: It does not matter being late provided that we are safe.

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have done it, check with the correct translation after this:

1. Run quickly! The cow is chasing you.
2. Kajang satay is very tasty.
3. I do it this way; you do it that way.
4. He is always sick.
5. This lamp is too bright.
6. Kenny is happy now.
7. This iron is hot; hold it carefully.
8. My (elder) sister sleeps early and gets up early.
9. Sometimes he plays badminton with his wife.
10. Don't come late!

Now check your sentences with the correct translation:

1. *Lari cepat! Lembu itu mengejar awak.*
2. *Sate Kajang sangat enak.*
3. *Saya buat begini; awak buat begitu.*
4. *Dia selalu sakit.*
5. *Lampu ini terlampau terang.*
6. *Kenny gembira sekarang.*
7. *Besi itu panas; pegang cermat-cermat.*
8. *Kakak saya tidur awal dan bangun awal.*
9. *Kadang-kadang dia bermain badminton dengan isterinya.*
10. *Jangan datang lambat!*

## LESSON 28

### ADVERBS

#### (Other kinds of Adverbs)

Other kinds of Adverbs are expressed more or less in the same way as they are expressed in English, that is, they may be placed before or after the word they modify, or at an appropriate part of the sentence.

Study the following sentences:

- a. *Saya sudah dengar cerita itu **dahulu**.* (Adverb of Time)  
I have heard that story **before**.
- b. ***Sekarang** kita mulakan kerja kita.* (Adverb of Time)  
**Now** we shall begin our work.
- c. *Dia **selalu** datang pada waktu petang.* (Adverb of Number)  
He **always** comes in the evening.
- d. *Saya telah **dua kali** membaca buku itu.* (Adverb of Number)  
I have read that book **twice**.
- e. *Duduk di **sini**.* (Adverb of Place)  
Sit **here**.



- f. *Anjing itu lari keluar.* (Adverb of Place)  
The dog ran **out**.
- g. *Hujan malam tadi lebat betul.* (Adverb of Degree)  
The rain was heavy **indeed** last night.
- h. *Lembu itu hampir mati.* (Adverb of Degree)  
The cow is **almost** dead.
- i. *Awak tetap bersalah.* (Affirmation)  
You are **surely** in the wrong.
- j. *Oleh itu dia dibuang kerja.* (Reason)  
**Therefore** he was dismissed.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*cerita*, story

*baju hujan*, raincoat

*guruh*, thunder

*jiran*, neighbour

*kain*, cloth

*keretapi mel*, mail train

*surat khabar*, newspaper

*mangga*, mangoes; padlock

*murid*, pupil

*senja*, dusk

*kertas*, paper

*kilat*, lightning

*ujian*, test

### Verbs

*berjalan kaki*, to go on foot

*bersalah*, to be in the wrong

*dibanjiri*, to be flooded

*menderu*, to roar

*tunggu*, to wait

*memancar*, to flash

*memandu*, to drive

*sampai*, to arrive

*tanya*, to ask

*telap*, pass through (of water)

### Adjectives

*comel*, cute

*singkat*, short

*gagal*, failed

*lebat*, heavy (of rain);  
abundant (of fruits)

### Adverbs

*berdentum-dentam*, with  
booming sound

*elok-elok*, nicely

*masih*, still

*mencurah-curah*, pouring

*sebab*, because

*supaya*, so that

*sementara*, a while

*seperti biasa*, as usual

*tidak berhenti-henti*,  
unceasingly

### Reading Passage for Comprehension

Read the following passage and try to understand all the words:

#### *Hari Hujan*

*Hari hampir senja. Angin bertiup sangat kencang. Kilat memancar sabung-menyabung. Guruh menderu berdentum-dentam. Tidak lama kemudian hujan pun turun mencurah-curah. Dalam masa yang singkat banyak kawasan yang rendah dibanjiri air.*

*Cik Timah pergi ke pasar memakai payung kertas. Dalam hujan begini, lebih baik memakai payung kertas daripada memakai payung kain. Payung kain telap air.*

*Hujan turun tidak berhenti-henti. Pada pagi esoknya hujan masih turun, tetapi tidak begitu lebat. Murid-murid yang pergi ke sekolah berjalan kaki, terpaksa memakai baju hujan atau payung.*

*Apabila Cik Timah balik dari pasar, dia berkata kepada jirannya Cik Sarina,*

*“Ikan di pasar bukan main(1) mahal hari ini!”*

*“Mengapa begitu?” tanya Cik Sarina.*

*“Sebab malam tadi hujan lebat. Nelayan tidak dapat menangkap ikan seperti biasa,” jawab Cik Timah.*

“*Itulah(2)! Kalau hujan, nelayan susah; kita pun susah(3),*”  
kata Cik Sarina pula.

**Note:**

1. The phrase *bukan main* is an idiom which literally means *It's no joke*. It actually means *terribly*.
2. *Itulah* here means *that is the consequence*.
3. The word *susah* here means *to experience difficulty*.

**Exercise**

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after the exercise:

1. First open the padlock this way, then push the door slowly.
2. Wait here a while, I want to buy a newspaper.
3. The boy came near.
4. Why didn't you come on that day?
5. The kitten is very cute.
6. Give me a little.
7. Write nicely so that your letter can be read with ease.
8. The mangoes he bought are very sweet.
9. He failed his driving test twice.
10. The mail train arrived late.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Mula-mula buka mangga (itu) begini; kemudian tolak pintu (itu) perlahan-lahan.*

2. *Tunggu di sini sebentar, saya hendak membeli surat khabar.*
3. *Budak (lelaki) itu datang dekat.*
4. *Mengapa awak tak datang pada hari itu?*
5. *Anak kucing itu sangat comel.*
6. *Beri saya sedikit.*
7. *Tulis elok-elok supaya surat awak boleh dibaca dengan senang.*
8. *(Buah) mangga yang dibelinya itu sangat manis.*
9. *Dia gagal ujian memandu kereta dua kali.*
10. *Keretapi mel sampai lambat.*

## LESSON 29

### PREPOSITIONS

**(Dari; Daripada; Ke; Kepada;  
Pada; Sampai; Dengan; Oleh)**

Many students have trouble with Prepositions. Untrained writers often make mistakes in the use of them. In the newspapers and on the radio, wrong usage of Prepositions is commonplace. Wrong usage of Prepositions naturally makes the sentences awkward and incomprehensible.

You should, therefore, try to follow the guides given below:

#### **Dari**

The word *dari* (from) is used with places and time, and not with persons. Examples:

*Pelancong-pelancong itu datang **dari** Hong Kong.*

The tourists come **from** Hong Kong.

*Mereka datang **dari** mana?*

Where do they come **from**?

*Budak-budak itu belajar **dari** pukul lapan.*

The children study **from** eight o'clock.

*Orang Islam berpuasa **dari** dinihari sampai senja.*

Muslims fast **from** dawn to dusk.

## Daripada

The word *daripada* (from) is used with persons. Examples:

*Surat itu datang **daripada** abang saya.*  
The letter comes **from** my (elder) brother.

*Saya menerima hadiah **daripada** Guru Besar.*  
I received a prize **from** the Headmaster.

*Daripada* is also used for comparing two things. Examples:

*Ikan lebih murah **daripada** daging.*  
Fish is cheaper **than** meat.

*Pisang lebih baik **daripada** rambutan.*  
Bananas are better **than** rambutans.

*Bersiar-siar di tepi laut lebih baik **daripada** duduk di sini.*  
Strolling along the beach is better **than** sitting here.

Another use of *daripada* is it translates the English phrase *out of* or *of*. Examples:

*Tiga **daripada** sepuluh orang mangsa kebakaran itu telah meninggal dunia.*  
Three **out of** the ten fire victims have died.

*Dua orang **daripada** pelajar-pelajar itu mendapat biasiswa.*  
Two **of** the students got scholarships.

The word *daripada* is also used for the expression *rather than*. Examples:

***Daripada** berbual-bual kosong lebih baik bekerja.*  
It is better to work **rather than** talk pointlessly.

*Daripada tinggal di bandar, lebih baik aku tinggal di kampung.*

I would **rather** live in the village **than** in the city.

## Ke

**Ke** (to) is used with places. Examples:

*Saya pergi ke pejabat tiap-tiap hari.*

I go **to** the office every day.

*Awak hendak pergi ke mana?*

Where do you want **to** go?

## Kepada

The word *kepada* (to) is used with persons. Examples:

*Beri surat ini kepada dia.*

Give this letter **to** him.

*Tolong hantarkan kepada saya dua buah kamus.*

Please send (**to**) me two dictionaries.

## Pada

The word *pada* can also mean *with* or *there is* as in the following examples:

*Wang kutipan itu ada pada dia.*

The money collected is **with** him.

*Pada kakinya, ada nyamuk.*

On his leg, **there** is a mosquito.

*Pada awak ada berapa biji?*

How many (fruits, eggs, etc.) are **with** you?

The word *pada* (at) is used with time. Examples:

*Majlis itu diadakan **pada** malam ini.*

The party will be held **tonight**.

***Pada** zaman dahulu, orang suka tinggal di tepi sungai.*

**In** the past, people liked to live along the rivers.

*Konsert itu bermula **pada** pukul 8.00 tepat.*

The concert starts **at** 8.00 sharp.

## Sampai

As a Verb, *sampai* means *to reach* or *to arrive*. As a Preposition, it means *till* or *until*. Examples:

*Peladang-peladang itu bekerja dari pagi **sampai** petang.*

The farmers work from morning **till** evening.

*Dia berusaha **sampai** berjaya.*

He worked (hard) **until** he succeeded.

**Note:** Instead of *sampai*, the words *hingga* or *sehingga* can be used.

## Dengan

The word *dengan* can mean *with* when followed by an agent or when there is an idea of togetherness of association. Examples:

*Dia mengecat basikalnya **dengan** cat biru.*

He painted his bicycle **with** blue paint.

*Dia menulis **dengan** pen.*

He writes **with** a pen.

*Asmah menggosok lantai **dengan** berus.*

Asmah scrubs the floor **with** a brush.

*Encik Roslan tinggal **dengan** isteri dan anak-anaknya.*



Encik Roslan lives **with** his wife and children.

*Dia suka makan roti **dengan** mentega.*

He likes to eat bread **with** butter.

*Pagi ini kami mendengar cerita “Singa **dengan** Tikus”.*

This morning, we listened to the story of “The Lion **and** the Mouse”.

*Dengan* also translates the word *by*, when it is followed by a means. Examples:

*Mereka pergi ke sekolah **dengan** bas.*

They go to school **by** bus.

*Nelayan-nelayan itu menangkap ikan **dengan** jala.*

The fishermen catch fish **by** using a net.

## Oleh

The word **oleh** is used for *by* when it is followed by the doer of an action. This is a passive sentence.

*Pameran itu akan dirasmikan **oleh** Perdana Menteri.*

The exhibition will be officiated **by** the Prime Minister.

*Berita itu telah disiarkan **oleh** Radio Televisyen Malaysia (RTM).*

The news was broadcast by Radio Television Malaysia (RTM).

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*biasiswa*, scholarship

*buah-buahan*, fruits

*dinihari*, dawn

*Guru Besar*, Headmaster

*kutipan*, collection

*majlis*, party; function

*mangsa*, victim

*nelayan*, fisherman

*kampung*, village  
*sabun*, soap  
*kebakaran*, a fire

*Perdana Menteri*, Prime  
Minister

### Verbs

*beri*, to give  
*bersiar-siar*, to stroll  
*berusaha*, to work hard  
*dibaiki*, is repaired

*disiarkan*, is broadcasted  
*membasuh*, to wash  
*menggosok*, to scrub  
*meninggal dunia*, to die

### Adjectives

*berjaya*, successful  
*busuk*, bad, rotten

*kosong*, empty  
*tepat*, sharp

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after the exercise:

1. The illegal immigrants came from Indonesia.
2. My father went to Kuantan yesterday.
3. At that time, he was sleeping.
4. Jefri lent Samad his squash racket.
5. My mother washes the clothes with soap.
6. The door was opened by a pretty girl.
7. Sometimes, he goes to Singapore by air (aeroplane).
8. The commuter is faster than the train.
9. They work from eight o'clock.
10. Five of the eggs are bad.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation after this:

1. *Pendatang-pendatang haram itu datang dari Indonesia.*
2. *Bapa saya pergi ke Kuantan semalam.*
3. *Pada masa itu, dia sedang tidur.*
4. *Jefri meminjamkan raket skuasanya kepada Samad.*
5. *Emak saya membasuh pakaian dengan sabun.*
6. *Pintu dibuka oleh seorang perempuan cantik.*
7. *Kadang-kadang dia pergi ke Singapura dengan kapal terbang.*
8. *Komuter lebih laju daripada keretapi.*
9. *Mereka bekerja dari pukul lapan.*
10. *Lima biji daripada telur-telur itu busuk.*

## LESSON 30

### PREPOSITIONS

**(di atas; di bawah; di hadapan;  
di belakang; di dalam; di luar; di sebelah)**

We will deal with a few more Prepositions which are commonly used in this lesson:

#### **di atas**

The word *di atas* can mean *on, over*. Examples:

*Kamera itu terletak **di atas** meja.*  
The camera is placed **on** the table.

*Bola lalu **di atas** palang gol.*  
The ball went **over** the cross-bar.

#### **di bawah**

The word *di bawah* can mean *under, underneath, below*. Examples:

*Kami berjalan **di bawah** jembatan itu.*  
We walked **under** the bridge.

*Kanak-kanak di bawah umur 12 tahun tidak dibenarkan masuk ke dewan.*

Children **below** 12 years old are not allowed into the hall.

### **di hadapan**

The word *di hadapan* means *in front of*. Examples:

*Ali berdiri di hadapan kelas.*

Ali stands **in front of** the class.

*Di hadapan Pejabat Daerah, ada padang.*

**In front of** the District Office, there is a field.

### **di belakang; di balik**

The word *di belakang* means *behind*, and *di balik* means *behind* or *at the back of*. Examples:

*Di belakang kedai, ada sungai.*

**Behind** the shop, there is a river.

*Dia bersembunyi di balik almari besar itu.*

He is hiding **behind** (at the back of) the big cupboard.

### **di dalam**

The word *di dalam* means *in* or *inside*. Examples:

*Surat-surat itu disimpan di dalam laci.*

The letters are kept **in** the drawer.

*Di dalam bakul itu, ada ular.*

**Inside** the basket, there is a snake.

### **di luar**

The word *di luar* means *outside*. Examples:

*Di luar dewan, ramai orang menunggu.*  
**Outside** the hall, many people are waiting.

*Rumah dia **di luar** kawasan berkurung.*  
His house is **outside** the curfew area.

### di sebelah

The word *di sebelah* means *beside*. Examples:

*Asmah duduk **di sebelah** saya.*  
Asmah sits **beside** me.

***Di sebelah** bangunan itu, ada kuil.*  
**Beside** the building, there is a temple.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*dewan*, hall

*jambatan*, bridge

*kamera*, camera

*kelas*, class

*kuil*, temple

*markah*, mark

*menara*, tower

*padang*, field

*perbendaharaan*, treasury

*peristiwa*, event

*puncak*, top; summit

*senibina*, architecture

*tengah*, middle

*tengah malam*, midnight

*tingkat*, storey

*upacara*, ceremony

### Verbs

*bersembunyi*, to hide

*bina*, to build

*menamakan*, to name; to call

*mengandungi*, to consist of

*menyaksikan*, to witness

*menyerupai*, to resemble

*terletak*, to be situated

*terpasang*, to install; to fix

### Adjectives

*indah*, splendid; magnificent

*bersejarah*, historical

*seperti*, such as

*terkenal*, famous

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Bangunan Abdul Samad*

*Bangunan Abdul Samad ialah sebuah bangunan yang indah di Kuala Lumpur. Ia terletak di Jalan Raja. Di hadapannya ada sebuah padang yang terkenal dengan nama Padang Kelab Selangor.*

*Bangunan ini dibina dalam tahun 1894. Ia menyerupai senibina bangunan-bangunan di Asia Barat. Ia mengandungi dua tingkat sahaja dan di tengah-tengahnya ada sebuah menara. Di puncak menara itu ada terpasang sebuah jam besar, sebab itulah ada orang menamakan bangunan ini Bangunan Jam Besar.*

*Di dalam bangunan ini terdapat beberapa pejabat kerajaan seperti perbendaharaan dan Pejabat Tanah. Beratus-ratus orang pekerja bekerja di situ.*

*Bangunan ini telah menyaksikan berbagai-bagai peristiwa bersejarah. Satu daripada peristiwa itu ialah upacara menurunkan bendera Union Jack dan menaikkan bendera kebangsaan negara kita buat pertama kalinya di padang di hadapan bangunan inilah, iaitu pada waktu tengah malam 31hb. Ogos, 1957.*

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. There are fifty marbles in the tin.
2. In front of the school, there is a field.
3. On the table, there is computer and a modem.
4. On top of the roof, there are three crows.

5. The children are playing outside the house.
6. Under the computer table, there is a Central Processing Unit (CPU).
7. The aeroplane flew over our school.
8. Behind the mosque, there is a small road.
9. Inside the resource room, there are audio-visual aids.
10. The 16th Commonwealth Games village is situated beside the National Sports Complex at Bukit Jalil, Kuala Lumpur.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Di dalam tin itu ada lima puluh biji guli.*
2. *Di hadapan sekolah (itu) ada padang.*
3. *Di atas meja ada computer dan modem.*
4. *Di atas atap ada tiga ekor burung gagak.*
5. *Kanak-kanak itu bermain di luar rumah.*
6. *Di bawah meja komputer ada sebuah unit pemprosesan pusat (CPU).*
7. *Kapal terbang itu terbang di atas sekolah kami.*
8. *Di belakang masjid ada jalan kecil.*
9. *Di dalam bilik sumber ada alat pandang dengar.*
10. *Perkampungan Sukan Komanwel yang ke-16 terletak di sebelah Kompleks Sukan Negara di Bukit Jalil, Kuala Lumpur.*



## LESSON 31

### CONJUNCTIONS

A Conjunction is a word which joins sentences, and sometimes words. Below is a list of the most commonly used Conjunctions in Bahasa Melayu:

*dan*, and  
*tetapi*, but  
*atau*, or  
*walaupun, sungguhpun,*  
*meskipun*, even if

*serta*, with, and  
*supaya*, so that  
*seolah-olah*, as if  
*dengan*, with

Examples of Conjunctions used to join sentences are:

*Nelayan menangkap ikan **dan** pesawah bertanam padi.*  
Fishermen catch fish **and** rice-planters plant rice.

*Badan mereka kecil-kecil **tetapi** sangat kuat bekerja.*  
They are of small build **but** they work very hard.

*Kita boleh pergi dengan kapal terbang **atau** menaiki kapal laut.*  
We can go by air (aeroplane) **or** by steamer.

*Sebuah gudang **dengan** barang-barang di dalamnya habis terbakar.*

A warehouse **and** the goods inside it were totally burnt down.

*Dia berbisik-bisik supaya kata-katanya tidak didengar orang lain.*

He whispered **so that** his words are not heard by other people.

*Lima orang pegawai kanan serta dua belas orang pegawai muda hadir di majlis itu.*

Five senior officers **and** twelve junior officers were present at the function.

*Mereka tertawa berdekah-dekah seolah-olah merekalah orang yang paling gembira hari itu.*

They laughed heartily **as if** they were the happiest people that day.

Examples of Conjunctions which join only words:

*Dia membeli ikan dan sayur.*

He bought fish **and** vegetables.

*Bilik ini kecil tetapi bersih.*

This room is small **but** clean.

*Ambil ini atau itu.*

Take this **or** that.

*Lima dengan dua jadi tujuh.*

Five **and** two make seven.

*Murid-murid serta ibu bapa mereka dijemput hadir.*

Students **and** their parents are invited to attend.

Some Conjunctions are used in pairs:

*sama ada ... atau, whether ... or, either ... or*

*sungguhpun ... tetapi*, though ... yet  
*bukan sahaja ... tetapi juga*, not only ... but also

Examples in sentences:

*Saya tidak tahu sama ada dia datang atau tidak.*  
I don't know **whether** he came **or** not.

*Sungguhpun dia miskin tetapi dia sentiasa gembira.*  
**Though** he is poor, he is always happy.

*Udara pada waktu pagi bukan sahaja bersih tetapi juga menyegarkan.*  
Morning air is not only clean **but also** refreshing.

Besides the above, there are a few compound expressions used as Conjunctions:

*dengan syarat*, on condition that  
*kalau tidak*, if not, or, else

Examples in sentences:

*Awak boleh pinjam buku ini dengan syarat awak pulangkannya dalam masa seminggu.*  
You can borrow this book **on condition that** you return it in one week's time.

*Dia mesti menyerah diri kalau tidak dia mati.*  
He must surrender **or** he will die.

*Belajarlah bersungguh-sungguh, kalau tidak awak tidak akan berjaya.*  
Study hard, **or else** you will not succeed.

Other Conjunctions are:

*sebab, kerana*, because, for      *kecuali*, except

*apabila, bila, ketika,*  
*manakala, when*  
*selepas, setelah, after*  
*sambil, while*

*di mana, where*  
*sebelum, before*  
*kalau, jika, jikalau, if*  
*hingga, sehingga, till, until*

Examples in sentences:

*Kucing itu mengiau kerana ia lapar.*

The cat meows **because** it is hungry.

*Setelah hujan berhenti kami pun berjalan semula.*

**After** the rain had stopped, we walked again.

*Pokok-pokok bunga itu akan hidup subur jika dibubuh baja.*

The flowering plants will grow well **if** they are manured.

*Hafaz perkataan-perkataan ini sebelum awak membuat latihan.*

Learn up the words **before** you do the exercise.

*Kami tidak tahu bila kapal terbang itu bertolak.*

We don't know **when** the plane is leaving.

*Dia sedang menyanyi sambil menari.*

She is singing **while** dancing.

*Dia sedang membelah kayu api ketika kami datang.*

He was splitting firework **when** we came.

*Hasan menggilap kasutnya sehingga berkilat.*

Hasan polished his shoes **until** they shone.

*Tiap-tiap pelajar terpaksa membayar yuran kecuali mereka yang tidak mampu.*

Every student has to pay fees **except** those who are unable to do so.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*anak yatim*, orphan  
*badan*, body  
*keluarga*, family  
*bapa saudara*, uncle  
*udara*, air  
*gudang*, ware-house  
*kata-kata*, words

*latihan*, exercise  
*pegawai kanan*, senior officer  
*pegawai muda*, junior officer  
*pertunjukan*, show

### Verbs

*berbisik*, to whisper  
*bermula*, to begin  
*hafaz*, to memorize  
*meminjam*, to borrow

*menggilap*, to polish  
*menyerah diri*, to surrender  
*tertawa*, to laugh  
*kenal*, to recognise

### Adjectives

*lapar*, hungry  
*mampu*, able

*miskin*, poor  
*menyegarkan*, refreshing

### Adverb

*berdekah-dekah*, heartily

### Preposition

*semenjak*, since

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after the exercise:

1. The Commonwealth Games started since 1930.

2. You can buy this dictionary at Dewan Bahasa dan Pustaka or the school bookshop.
3. They talked while playing chess.
4. I don't know whether he wants to eat in an air-conditioned restaurant.
5. I like Computer Science but I don't like Office Management.
6. He worked hard so that he would be promoted.
7. Though iron is cheaper than gold, it is very useful.
8. Malaysian fruits are not only cheap but also delicious.
9. The two orphans lived with their uncle.
10. The show had started when we arrived.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Sukan Komanwel telah bermula semenjak 1930.*
2. *Awak boleh beli kamus ini di Dewan Bahasa dan Pustaka atau kedai buku sekolah.*
3. *Mereka bercakap sambil bermain catur.*
4. *Saya tidak tahu sama ada dia hendak makan di restoran berhawa dingin atau tidak.*
5. *Saya suka Sains Komputer tetapi saya tidak suka Pengurusan Pejabat.*
6. *Dia bekerja bersungguh-sungguh supaya dia akan dinaikkan pangkat.*
7. *Sungguhpun besi lebih murah daripada emas, ia sangat berguna.*
8. *Buah-buahan Malaysia bukan sahaja murah tetapi juga enak (sedap).*
9. *Dua orang anak yatim itu tinggal dengan bapa saudara mereka.*
10. *Pertunjukan itu telah bermula ketika kami sampai.*

## LESSON 32

### TIME AND DAY

(Time: Days of the Week;  
Months of the Year; Date)

#### Time

<i>pukul satu</i>	one o'clock
<i>pukul lima</i>	five o'clock
<i>pukul sembilan</i>	nine o'clock
<i>pukul dua belas</i>	twelve o'clock
<i>pukul tiga suku</i>	a quarter past three
<i>pukul lapan suku</i>	a quarter past eight
<i>pukul dua setengah</i>	half past two
<i>pukul tujuh setengah</i>	half past seven
<i>pukul empat tiga suku</i>	a quarter to five
<i>pukul sebelas tiga suku</i>	a quarter to twelve

Now study the following expressions:

<i>pukul tiga sepuluh</i>	ten (minutes) past three
<i>pukul enam dua puluh lima</i>	twenty five (minutes) past
<i>minit</i>	six
<i>lagi lapan minit pukul</i>	eight minutes to nine
<i>sembilan</i>	

## Days of the Week

The days of the week are as follows:

<i>hari Ahad</i>	Sunday
<i>hari Isnin</i>	Monday
<i>hari Selasa</i>	Tuesday
<i>hari Rabu</i>	Wednesday
<i>hari Khamis</i>	Thursday
<i>hari Jumaat</i>	Friday
<i>hari Sabtu</i>	Saturday

## Months of the Year

<i>Januari</i>	January	31 days
<i>Februari</i>	February	28 days
<i>Mach</i>	March	31 days
<i>April</i>	April	30 days
<i>Mei</i>	May	31 days
<i>Jun</i>	June	30 days
<i>Julai</i>	July	31 days
<i>Ogos</i>	August	31 days
<i>September</i>	September	30 days
<i>Oktober</i>	October	31 days
<i>November</i>	November	30 days
<i>Disember</i>	December	31 days

## Date

In expressing the date, the usual practice is to place the day first, then the month, finally the year. Immediately after the day, the letters *hb* is placed. It is the abbreviation of *haribulan* (day of the month). Examples:

<i>31hb Ogos, 1957</i>	31st August, 1957
<i>2hb April, 1996</i>	2nd April, 1996
<i>23hb Julai, 1998</i>	23rd July, 1998
<i>11hb September, 1998</i>	11th September, 1998



## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*kemerdekaan*, independence

*kesesakan jalanraya*, traffic  
congestion

*minit*, minute

*kilang*, factory

*masjid*, mosque

*ulangtahun*, anniversary

### Verbs

*bersembahyang*, to pray

*dipadamkan*, to be switched  
off

*lupa*, to forget

*mengelakkan*, to avoid

### Conjunctions

*oleh kerana*, because

*tetapi*, but

### Conversation

A: *Awak bangun pada pukul berapa?*

B: *Saya bangun pada pukul enam.*

A: *Awak pergi ke pejabat pada pukul berapa?*

B: *Biasanya saya pergi ke pejabat pada pukul tujuh  
suku pagi.*

A: *Mengapa begitu awal? Kerja di pejabat bermula  
pada pukul berapa?*

B: *Kerja di pejabat bermula pada pukul lapan, tetapi  
kerana hendak mengelakkan daripada kesesakan  
jalan raya saya meninggalkan rumah awal.*

A: *Awak pulang pukul berapa?*

B: *Pada hari-hari lain saya pulang pada pukul empat  
suku tetapi, oleh kerana hari ini hari Sabtu, saya  
pulang pada pukul dua belas tiga suku.*

A: *Pada hari Isnin depan ini awak nak ke mana?*

B: *Ke mana lagi? Ke Stadiumlah. Bukankah hari itu hari ulangtahun kemerdekaan negara kita?*

A: *Oh, ya. Saya lupa!*

B: *Marilah kita pergi ke sana merayakan Hari Kebangsaan kita. Bawalah anak-anak bersama.*

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise.

1. The commuter will leave the station at half past six.
2. The 17th Commonwealth Games will be held in Manchester in the year 2002.
3. There is lots of rain in the months of November, December and January.
4. The seminar starts at a quarter past eight.
5. January has 31 days but February has 28 days only.
6. Muslims go to the mosque to pray on Fridays.
7. I usually go jogging at six o'clock.
8. The hottest month is July or August.
9. Office and factory workers do not work on Sundays.
10. The Sijil Pelajaran Malaysia (SPM) trial examination will be held at the end of September.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Komuter akan bertolak dari stesen pada pukul enam setengah.*
2. *Sukan Komanwel yang ke-17 akan berlangsung di Manchester pada tahun 200.*

3. *Banyak hujan turun dalam bulan November, Disember dan Januari.*
4. *Seminar itu bermula pada pukul lapan suku.*
5. *Bulan Januari ada 31 hari tetapi bulan Februari ada 28 hari.*
6. *Orang-orang Islam pergi ke masjid untuk bersembahyang pada hari Jumaat.*
7. *Saya biasanya pergi jogging pada pukul enam.*
8. *Bulan yang panas sekali ialah bulan Julai atau bulan Ogos.*
9. *Pekerja-pekerja pejabat dan kilang tidak bekerja pada hari Ahad.*
10. *Peperiksaan percubaan Sijil Pelajaran Malaysia (SPM) akan diadakan pada hujung bulan September.*

## LESSON 33

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS (First and Second Persons)

Up to now, you have learnt only one word each for the first and second persons singular—*saya* and *awak*. In Lesson 4, you were told that there are a dozen words each for the above Personal Pronouns. A few of these, of course, are used provincially, and few others by certain groups of people only.

It should be borne in mind that the proper use of Personal Pronouns in Bahasa Melayu (particularly in the first and second persons) is of paramount importance, and the wrong use of such words, either intentionally or unintentionally, could create unpleasantness or even arouse the anger of the person addressed. A person who cannot use the Personal Pronouns appropriately would be termed as *kurang ajar* or *rude*. So be cautious.

Study carefully the following:

1. The word *aku* is used by a superior to an inferior, either in age or in social status, such as a father to his child, an employer to an employee, etc. It is also used by younger people who are intimate to each other, and in prayer. However, among members of refined society this word is considered as crude. Teachers would certainly avoid using it. The word *aku* is sometimes abbreviated to *ku*. The opposite of *aku* is *engkau*. Its abbrev-

viation is *kau*. A variant of *aku* is *daku*, and *engkau* is *dikau*. This form is used only on certain occasions. Examples:

*Kau panjat dan petik buah itu; biar aku kutip di bawah.*

You climb up and pluck the fruits; I'll gather them below.

*Ya Allah! Ampunkanlah dosaku.*

Oh God! Forgive me of my sins.

2. The word *hamba*, which means slave, is a polite word and is used widely by people in Kelantan and Upper Perak. This word is also found in old literature books. Its opposite is *tuan*. Examples:

*Kalau Cik Mahmood nak pergi ke pantai hamba nak pergi sama.*

If you (Cik Mahmood) are going to the beach, I would like to go too.

*"Kasihlanlah hamba wahai Dayang! Janganlah tuan hampakan permintaan hamba ini," Derma memujuk.*

"Do pity me oh Dayang! Please do not spurn my request," said Derma coaxing.

3. The word *hamba tuan* (your master's slave) is found in old literature books. This is becoming obsolete. Its opposite is *tuan*.
4. The word *hamba datuk* (the datuk's slave) is also becoming obsolete. It is sometimes used perhaps when one is addressing a *Datuk Penghulu* (village headman) in letter-writing. Its opposite is *datuk*. Examples:

*Bersama-sama ini **hamba datuk** sertakan sekeping pelan tanah yang **datuk** perlukan itu.*

Herewith I enclose a plan of the land which you required.

5. The words *teman* (mate) and *kawan* (friend) are widely used by grown-up people in Perak and Johor respectively. Both are considered polite. The opposite of *teman* is *mika*, and *kawan* is *awak*. Examples:

*Tadi teman nampak anak **mika** di situ.*

Just now I saw your child there.

***Kawan** suka benar mendengar lagu itu.*

I like that song very much.

6. The word *beta* is used when a ruler speaks to his brother ruler or to his subject. Its opposite is *sahabat beta*. Examples:

***Beta** sukacita sekiranya **sahabat beta** menjawab warkah itu dengan seberapa segera.*

I shall be glad if **you** will give a reply to my letter as soon as possible.

7. The word *patik* is used when a commoner is addressing a member of the royal family. Its opposite is *tuanku* or *tengku* or *engku* and such other variants. Examples:

*Dengan ini **patik** berharap dapat **tengku** memperkenankan permohonan **patik**.*

I hope that **you** will grant **my** request.

8. The words *I* (from English), (9) *ana* (Arabic), and (10) *goa* (from Chinese) are much used in conversation by certain groups of people who were educated in the re-

spective educational institutions, or influenced by their social environment. The opposites are *you*, *anta* and *lu* respectively. The continued use of these words are not conducive to the development of the language.

9. Another way to show politeness in the use of Personal Pronouns is by adopting suitable forms of address. A mother would address herself as *mak* (not *saya*) when talking to her own children, and *makcik* to her nephews and nieces and other people's children. A father would address himself as *ayah*, *abah*, *pak* or *bapak* (or whatever term his children call him) when talking to his own children, and *pakcik* to his nephews and nieces and other people's children.

Similarly, *kak* is used by the sister; *abang* (or *bang* which is more endearing) by the brother; *tok* by the grandfather; and *nenek* by the grandmother. Examples:

*Belajarliah rajin-rajin, nanti ayah belikan barang mainan.*

Study hard, I shall buy you a toy.

*Jam tangan abang, Lan\* simpan di dalam laci.*

I keep your watch in the drawer.

**Note:** \*The boy calls himself by the short form of his personal name.

10. When a child or even an adult speaks to his parents, he always addresses himself the way his parents call him, which in most cases, is by his pet name or the first or last syllable or last two syllables of his personal name. Examples:

*“Mak, mak! Di tengah jalan, Mat nampak orang bergaduh,” kata Ahmad kepada emaknya.*

“Mother, mother! On the way, I saw people fighting,” said Ahmad to his mother.

11. Some teachers address themselves as *cikgu* when talking to their pupils, while others prefer *saya*. Both are fine but you, as a student, should never address your teacher as *awak*. Don't be *kurang ajar*!
12. The opposite of *saya* is either *awak*, *saudara*, *saudari* or *anda*. The use of *awak* has been explained in Lesson 4. The word *saudara* (brother) is polite and used to address persons who are about the same age of the speaker. *Saudari* (sister) is for females. *Anda* can be used for both sexes. The use of *anda* is prevalent in writing. Examples:

*Ini buku saya, bukan buku saudara.*

This is my book, not yours.

*Barang-barang itu akan saya serahkan kepada anda esok.*

I shall hand over those things to you tomorrow.

13. The word *kamu* (you) is used both in the singular and the plural. Generally, it is used by the elders and people of high social status. It is also used by younger people who are close to each other. Examples:

*“Kamu tidak dibenarkan pulang sebelum kamu menyetujui kerja ini,” kata Cikgu Halim.*

“You are not allowed to go home before you complete this work,” said Cikgu Halim.



*Kata Cikgu Wati, “Apabila saya membaca, kamu semua dengar baik-baik.”*

Cikgu Wati said, “When I am reading, **all of you** listen carefully.”

## LESSON 34

### PRONOUNS

#### (Personal Pronouns used in Letter-Writing)

In letter-writing, you have to use special words as Personal Pronouns. Study them carefully:

Nature of letter	First person Pronoun (Sender of letter)	Second person Pronoun (Receiver of letter)
Letters to friends or male acquaintances.	<i>saya</i>	<i>saudara</i>
Letters to friends or female acquaintances.	<i>saya</i>	<i>tuan</i>
Official or business letters.	<i>saya</i>	<i>ayahanda</i>
Letters to father, uncles or persons whose age is about the same as your father's age.	<i>anakanda</i>	<i>anakanda</i>
Letters to sons, daughters, nephews or nieces.	<i>ayahanda (for males)</i> <i>bonda (for females)</i>	<i>anakanda</i>
Letters to elder brother, elder sister, male cousin, lover (male) or husband.	<i>adinda</i>	<i>kakanda</i>

Letters to younger brother, younger sister, female cousin, lover (female) or wife.	<i>kakanda</i>	<i>adinda</i>
Letters to grandfather or grandmother.	<i>cucunda</i>	<i>nenda</i>
Letters to grandchild.	<i>nenda</i>	<i>cucunda</i>

**Note:** The Pronouns *kakanda* is sometimes contracted to *kanda*; *adinda* to *dinda*; and *cucunda* to *cunda*.

## Model Letters

(a) A letter from a young man who has just got a job in Kuala Lumpur to his father who lives far away in the rural area:

*Pejabat Cukai Pendapatan,  
Bangunan Sulaiman,  
50740 Kuala Lumpur.  
2hb. September, 1999.*

*Ke hadapan majlis ayahanda dan bonda yang dikasihi serta keluarga sekalian dengan selamatnya.*

*Dengan sukacitanya anakanda maklumkan bahawa anakanda telah bertugas di Pejabat Cukai Pendapatan yang anakanda nyatakan tempoh hari. Ramai kakitangan bekerja di pejabat ini. Dalam bahagian anakanda ada dua orang pegawai, enam orang pegawai kerani dan dua orang jurutaip.*

*Kami di sini mula bekerja pada pukul 8.15 pagi dan habis pada pukul 4.15 petang. Waktu makan dan rehat ialah dari pukul 12.45 hingga 1.45 petang.*

*Anakanda berulang-alik ke pejabat dengan menaiki bas Intrakota; tambangnya 90 sen sahaja. Ayahanda dan bonda jang-*

anlah bimbangkan anakanda kerana anakanda akan menjaga diri baik-baik. Dodol yang bonda minta sampaikan kepada Makcik Rahmah telah pun anakanda berikan. Dia mengucapkan berbanyak-banyak terima kasih.

*Sambutlah salam mesra daripada anakanda yang jauh.*

*Anakanda yang jauh,  
Azman Aziz.*

**Note:** Depending on the nature of the letter, we can begin a letter in various ways. *Ke hadapan majlis* literally means *Before the presence*. It is suitable when corresponding with parents and those who deserve respect.

(b) A letter from a father to his daughter who is undergoing training at a college in Taiping.

*2, Jalan Duku,  
Kampung Jambu,  
34000 Taiping,  
Perak.  
21hb. Disember, 1999.*

*Anakanda Asmah yang dikasihi dengan selamatnya.*

*Surat anakanda bertarikh 15hb. Disember telah selamat ayahanda terima. Bersama-sama ini ayahanda sertakan sekeping Kiriman Wang No. AB 345789 bernilai RM2,000 untuk kegunaan anakanda. Setelah anakanda membaca surat ini, silalah balas.*

*Dalam bungkusan lain ayahanda ada mengirinkan dua buah buku yang anakanda perlukan itu. Ayahanda dan bonda berharap anakanda belajar bersungguh-sungguh kerana seperti*

*yang anakanda nyutakan peperiksaan akan berlangsung tidak lama lagi.*

*Sekianlah ayahanda maklumkan.*

*Ayahanda,  
Ahmad Yunus.*

(c) A letter from a girl inviting her friend for a picnic.

*109, Jalan Malawati,  
68000 Ampang,  
Selangor.  
29hb. Oktober, 1999.*

*Saudariku Asmah,*

*Keluarga saya bercadang hendak pergi berkelah di Port Dickson pada hari Ahad hadapan bersamaan 5hb. November. Saya gembira sekiranya saudara dapat pergi bersama-sama. Kami akan pergi dengan motokar dan balik pada hari itu juga. Jika saudara ingin pergi silalah datang ke rumah pada hari Sabtu ini.*

*Terimalah salam saya sekeluarga untuk saudara sekeluarga. Terima kasih.*

*Yang menunggu,  
Halimah*

(d) A letter from a customer to a bookshop manager:

*Tan Kim Seng  
24, Jalan Tuanku Abdul Rahman,  
50740 Kuala Lumpur.*

*Pengurus Besar  
Pelanduk Publications (M) Sdn. Bhd.,  
Lot 10, Industrial Estate,  
Subang Jaya, Selangor.  
15hb. Mach, 1999.*

*Tuan,*

*PER: PESANAN BUKU-BUKU*

*Sila kirimkan kepada saya dengan segera buku-buku yang disenaraikan di bawah ini:*

- 1. The Nadra Tragedy: 2 buah  
The Maria Hertogh Controversy: 1 buah*
- 2. PELANDUK POCKET—Kamus Peribahasa: 5 buah*
- 3. PELANDUK POCKET—Malay Dictionary: 5 buah*
- 4. Malaysia Income Tax Manual: 2 buah*
- 5. Chinese System of Food Cures: 2 buah*

*Bersama-sama ini disertakan Kiriman Wang No: AC075472 sebanyak RM400.00 (Ringgit: Empat Ratus sahaja).*

*Sekian, terima kasih.*

*Yang benar,*

*(Tan Kim Seng)*

## LESSON 35

### MORE CLASSIFIERS

**(Helai; Pucuk; Bilah; Keping;  
Ketul; Buku; Kuntum; Pintu; Rawan)**

In Lesson 8, you have learnt five of the most commonly used Classifiers. In this lesson, another set of commonly used Classifiers is given, namely:

1. *Helai* (sheet or piece) is used for counting flat and thin objects such as paper (*kertas*), mats (*tikar*), clothing (*pakaian*), leaves (*daun*), etc. Examples:

<i>dua helai tikar</i>	two mats
<i>lima helai kemeja</i>	five shirts
<i>tiga helai daun</i>	three leaves
<i>sehelai saputangan</i>	one handkerchief

2. *Pucuk* is used for firearms (*senjata api*), letters (*surat*), needles (*jarum*). Examples:

<i>tiga pucuk senapang</i>	three guns
<i>sepuluh pucuk surat</i>	ten letters
<i>dua pucuk jarum</i>	two needles

3. *Bilah* is used for bladed objects such as knives (*pisau*), weapons (*senjata*), axe (*kapak*), etc. Examples:

<i>lima bilah pedang</i>	five swords
<i>enam bilah pisau</i>	six knives
<i>sebilah kapak</i>	an axe

4. *Keping* (piece) is used for flat thick objects such as planks (*papan*), biscuits (*biskut*) etc. Examples:

<i>dua puluh keping papan</i>	twenty planks
<i>empat keping biskut</i>	four biscuits

5. *Ketul* is used for hard, lumpy objects usually of irregular shape, such as pebbles (*batu*), meat (*daging*), etc. Examples:

<i>dua ketul batu</i>	two pebbles
<i>seketul daging</i>	a piece of meat

6. *Bentuk* is used for finger-rings (*cincin*) and fishing-hooks (*mata kail*). Examples:

<i>tiga bentuk cincin</i>	three rings
<i>lima bentuk mata kail</i>	five fishing-hooks

7. *Buku* (lump) is used for loaves of bread (*roti*). Examples:

<i>dua buku roti</i>	two loaves of bread
----------------------	---------------------

8. *Kuntum* (blossom) is used for individual flowers. Examples:

<i>enam kuntum bunga</i>	six flowers
--------------------------	-------------

(A bouquet of flowers is *seikat bunga*.)

9. *Pintu* (door) is used for shop-houses or terrace houses. Examples:



<i>empat pintu rumah kedai</i>	four shop-houses
<i>dua pintu rumah deret</i>	two terrace houses

10. *Rawan* is used for fishing-nets such as *jala* (casting net). Examples:

<i>tiga rawan jala</i>	three casting nets
------------------------	--------------------

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

<i>batu</i> , stone	<i>papan</i> , plank
<i>biskut</i> , biscuit	<i>pakaian</i> , clothes
<i>cincin</i> , finger-ring	<i>perut</i> , stomach
<i>daun</i> , leaf	<i>pokok</i> , tree
<i>doktor</i> , doctor	<i>rumah kedai</i> , shop-house
<i>duri</i> , thorn	<i>sabun</i> , soap
<i>gandum</i> , wheat	<i>senjata</i> , weapon
<i>gigi</i> , tooth	<i>senjata api</i> , fire arms
<i>intan</i> , diamond	<i>tepung</i> , flour
<i>jarum</i> , needle	<i>tikar</i> , mat
<i>kertas</i> , paper	<i>tilam</i> , mattress
<i>lebah</i> , bee	<i>tunangan</i> , fiance, fiancee

### Exercise

Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the correct Classifiers:

1. *Tiap-tiap kotak mengandungi dua puluh \_\_\_\_\_ jarum.*
2. *Semasa dia melawat bandar Bangkok tahun sudah dia membeli enam \_\_\_\_\_ pisau tembaga.*
3. *Di dalam tin itu didapati kira-kira 100 \_\_\_\_\_ biskut.*

4. *Penjala itu melemparkan se \_\_\_\_\_ batu sebelum dia menebar jalanya.*
5. *Di jari manisnya tersarung se \_\_\_\_\_ cincin emas.*
6. *Anak dia sudah tumbuh dua \_\_\_\_\_ gigi.*
7. *Saya hendak membeli dua \_\_\_\_\_ tuala.*
8. *Bersama-sama surat itu dia menyertakan dua \_\_\_\_\_ gambar.*
9. *Se \_\_\_\_\_ bunga itu berharga RM2.00.*
10. *Dalam sebungkus ada dua belas \_\_\_\_\_ rokok.*

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise:

1. My father received four electronic mails this morning.
2. The dentist extracted two of his bad teeth.
3. Every student is provided with a computer.
4. Father bought two shirts and six handkerchiefs.
5. Please give me ten sheets of A4-sized paper.
6. A new gun costs about RM1,200.00.
7. There are five loaves of bread on the table.
8. The carpenter planed fifteen pieces of planks today.
9. Her fiance gave her a diamond ring.
10. My aunt bought two pieces of rubber mats yesterday.
11. My grandfather has a walking stick.
12. The old fisherman has two fishing nets.
13. There are six needles in the drawer.
14. Wahid eats three pieces of biscuits every morning.
15. There are five pebbles in the basket.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation on the following page:

1. *Bapa saya menerima empat pucuk mel elektronik pagi ini.*
2. *Doktor gigi mencabut dua batang gigi buruknya.*
3. *Tiap-tiap murid dibekalkan dengan sebuah komputer.*
4. *Bapa membeli dua helai kemeja dan enam helai saputangan.*
5. *Tolong herikan saya sepuluh helai kertas bersaiz A4.*
6. *Sepucuk senapang baru berharga kira-kira RM1,200.00.*
7. *Di atas meja ada lima buku roti.*
8. *Tukang kayu mengetam lima belas keping papan hari ini.*
9. *Tunangnya memberi dia sebentuk cincin berlian.*
10. *Emak saudara saya membeli dua helai tikar getah semalam.*
11. *Datuk saya ada sebatang tongkat.*
12. *Nelayan tua itu ada dua rawan jala.*
13. *Di dalam laci ada enam pucuk jarum.*
14. *Wahid makan tiga keping biskut tiap-tiap pagi.*
15. *Di dalam bakul ada lima ketul batu.*

### FORMS OF ADDRESS

When we mention or write a person's name, we usually attach a certain prefix to his name, according to his social status or the respect accorded to him.

Below is a list of such words and examples, showing you when to use them:

1. *Encik* is prefixed to the name of a male person of a high social status, or who deserves some respect. This word was originally used only among the Malays but now it is commonly used among the non-Malays as well. In writing, it is often contracted to *En.* Examples:

*Ketua kerani Pejabat Pos itu bernama **En.** Mahmud Nordin.*

The chief clerk of the Post Office is **En.** Mahmud Nordin.

***En.** Lee Fan Chin, tuannya Syarikat Tenaga Baru, berlepas ke Hong Kong semalam.*

**En.** Lee Fan Chin, proprietor of Syarikat Tenaga Baru, left for Hong Kong yesterday.

***En.** Ramanathan menderma wang sebanyak RM 5,000 kepada Tabung Derma Perwira.*

**En.** Ramanathan donated RM5,000 to the Heroes' Fund.

2. *Cik* is the counterpart of *Encik*. It is actually the abbreviation of *Encik*. It is used with a female person's name. In conversation, it can be used for both male and female. Examples:

*Cik Lilawathi mengemukakan beberapa syor yang baik dalam mesyuarat itu.*

**Cik** Lilawathi put forward a number of good suggestions in the meeting.

*Cik Sarjit Kaur dan Cik Nelly Tan sampai di rumah Cik Aishah kira-kira pada pukul 4.00 petang.*

**Cik** Sarjit Kaur and **Cik** Nelly Tan arrived at **Cik** Aishah's house at about 4.00 p.m.

3. *Tuan* is used with the names of male persons of higher social status. These include heads of government departments or private companies, adult persons who have made the pilgrimage and those of the Syed clan. In correspondence, this word can be used without any limitation. Its abbreviation is *Tn.* Examples:

*Di antara yang hadir di majlis makan malam itu termasuklah Tn. Michael de Sousa, Tn. Yap Him Kee, dan Tn. S. Arokiasami.*

Among those present at the dinner party include **Tn.** Michael de Sousa, **Tn.** Yap Him Kee, and **Tn.** S. Arokiasami.

*Usul tersebut dikemukakan oleh Tn. Syed Salim bin Ahmad, dan disokong oleh Tn. Haji Khairuddin.*

The motion was put forward by **Tn.** Syed Salim bin Ahmad, and seconded by **Tn.** Haji Khairuddin.

4. *Puan* is the counterpart of *Tuan*, and it is used only for married ladies. Its abbreviation is *Pn*. Examples:

**Pn.** *Bhupalan dipilih menjadi Yang Dipertua kelab kami, dan Pn. Salmah menjadi setiausahanya.*

**Pn.** Bhupalan was elected the President of our club, and **Pn.** Salmah the secretary.

**Pn.** *Khatijah telah menetap di Johor Bahru.*

**Pn.** Khatijah has settled down in Johor Bahru.

5. **Si** is used with names of persons who are familiar with the speaker or who are young in age—irrespective of sex. Sometimes, it is also used with names of persons who are advanced in age or high in social status, but with the intention of provocation or contempt. Examples:

**Si** *Musa dengan Si Timah datang dalam hujan.*

Musa and Timah came in the rain.

*Kata budak-budak tu Si Gemuk jatuh dari pokok rambutan!*

The children said Gemuk fell from the rambutan tree!

**Note:** When used with a Proper Noun, *Si* is written in capital but with a Common Noun, it is in small letter.  
Examples:

*Di dalam saku seluar si mati didapati wang empat ribu ringgit.*

In the pocket of the dead person's trousers was found four thousand ringgit.

*Si miskin hidup merana; si buta berjalan teraba-raba.*

The poor live in suffering; the blind walk gropingly.

6. *Sang*, in old literature books is used with names of respected persons, but now it is used with names of animals in animal stories. Examples:

*Sang Nata pun mula berburu di dalam hutan itu.*  
**Sang** Nata then started hunting in the jungle.

*Sedang Sang Belang berjalan-jalan di dalam hutan itu, dilihatnya Sang Kancil duduk tercangkung dekat selonggok tahi kerbau.*

While **Sang** Belang was walking in the jungle, he saw **Sang** Kancil squatting near a heap of buffalo droppings.

*Di tengah jalan, Sang Kucing berjumpa dengan Sang Arnab.*

On the way, **Sang** Kucing came across **Sang** Arnab.

7. *Datuk* is used with names of persons who have been conferred *datukship*. The wife of a *Datuk* takes the title of *Datin*. It should be noted, however, that a lady who has been conferred *datukship* on her own right is also addressed as *Datuk*, and not *Datin*. Her husband does not automatically take the title of *Datuk*. Examples:

*Datuk Abdul Manaf, P.M.N. telah dilantik menjadi ahli Suruhanjaya Gaji.*

**Datuk** Abdul Manaf, P.M.N. has been appointed a member of the Salary Commission.

*Datuk Rahmah mengikut suaminya, En. Salehuddin, ke England dengan kapal terbang pagi ini.*

**Datuk** Rahmah accompanied her husband, En. Salehuddin, to England by plane this morning.

Besides *Datuk* and *Datin*, there are other titles bestowed by the various States, and these should be used accordingly.

8. *Pak* is the short form of *bapa* and used with names of persons whose age is about the age of the speaker's father. Its alternative is *pakcik*. This is equivalent to the English word *uncle*. Examples:

*Pak Kadir telah mengedarkan kad-kad jemputan perkahwinan anak perempuannya.*

**Pak** Kadir has sent out invitation cards for the wedding of his daughter.

*Pakcik Sidin dilantik menjadi Pengerusi, Lembaga Pengurus, Sekolah Bestari Ipoh.*

**Pakcik** Sidin was appointed Chairman of the Board of Governors, Sekolah Bestari Ipoh.

9. *Mak* originates from the word *emak*, and is the counterpart of *pak*. Its alternative is *makcik*. The English equivalent is *aunt*. Examples:

*Mak Minah telah berlepas ke Pulau Pinang.*

**Mak** Minah has left for Pulau Pinang.

*Makcik Rahmah menyatakan bahawa tangan perempuan yang lembut itu boleh menggegarkan dunia.*

**Makcik** Rahmah said that the gentle hands of women could shake the world.

10. *Abang* is used with the name of a male person who is slightly older than you. Examples:

*Abang Rahmat belum sampai lagikah?*

Hasn't **Abang** Rahmat arrived yet?



*Minggu hadapan **Abang** Rosdin hendak mendirikan rumah baru di hadapan rumah lamanya.*

Next week, **Abang** Rosdin wants to erect a new house in front of his old one.

11. *Kak* is the counterpart of *Abang*. Examples:

***Kak** Timah telah menganjurkan kursus urusan rumah tangga untuk pemudi-pemudi kampung ini.*

**Kak** Timah has sponsored a domestic course for the girls of the village.

*Ujar **Kak** Salmah, "Jangan biarkan dia pergi."*

**Kak** Salmah said, "Don't let him go."

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*kad*, card

*ketua kerani*, chief clerk

*setiausaha*, secretary

*longgok*, a heap

*rumah tangga*, home, domestic

*seluar*, trouser

*Yang Dipertua*, President  
(of an organisation)

*syor*, suggestion

*tahi kerbau*, buffalo  
droppings

*teksi*, taxi

*tuannya*, proprietor

*saku*, pocket

*Suruhanjaya Gaji*, Salary  
Commission

### Verbs

*berburu*, to go hunting

*menggegarkan*, to shake

*berlanggar*, to collide

*biarkan*, to let

*menderma*, to donate

*menetap*, to reside

permanently

*menganjurkan*, to sponsor

*mengemukakan*, to put  
to table (a motion),  
forward

## Adjectives

*buta*, blind

*cermat*, careful

## Adverbs

*merana*, suffering  
*teraba-raba*, gropingly

*tercangkung*, squatting

## Conversation

*Mak Bedah:* Ah Din! Bila kau sampai?

*Kamaluddin:* Baru sekejap, makcik.

*Mak Bedah:* Dengan apa kau datang?

*Kamaluddin:* Dengan teksi, makcik.

*Mak Bedah:* Makcik dengar teksi sekarang ni selalu sangat melanggar

*Kamaluddin:* Oh, pemandu teksi yang Din naik ini cermat orangnya. Dia orang kampung kami .... Nah, makcik!.... (giving something) Pakcik mana? Kah Mah mana?

*Mak Bedah:* Apa ni? (Receiving a packet.) Membawa (1) buah tangan! Pakcik kau pergi ke Ipoh, Kak Mah kau pergi belajar menjahit ... Apa khabar (2) emak dan ayah kau?

*Kamaluddin:* Khabar baik, makcik, mereka semua sihat.

*Mak Bedah:* Duduklah! Sekejap lagi Kak Mah kau tu pulanglah.

**Note:** (1) *Buah tangan* is an idiom which means a present given by a visitor. (2) The word *dan* (and) between *emak* and *ayah* is optional.

### NOUNS (Singular and Plural)

You have learnt that number or quantity in Bahasa Melayu is determined by the context. You have been told that if the plural is to be indicated, a Numeral, a Qualifier, or a Numeral with a Classifier is to be attached to the Noun. If the exact quantity is not stated, the Noun is reduplicated.

However, you should bear in mind that not all words which are reduplicated in form are plural. Such words as *kanak-kanak*, *cita-cita*, *kupu-kupu*, *gula-gula* and *anai-anai* are not plural. We have many words of this category. A short list is given below:

*agar-agar*, a sea-weed

*angan-angan*, thought,  
day-dream

*anting-anting*, an ear-ring

*labi-labi*, a river turtle

*kura-kura*, a tortoise

*pundi-pundi*, a purse

*ondeh-ondeh*, a kind of cake

*bari-bari*, a fruit fly

*riang-riang*, a cicada

*biri-biri*, a sheep

*buli-buli*, small bottle

*kelip-kelip*, a firefly

*layang-layang*, a kite

*oleh-oleh*, a kind of food

Examples of the above words used in sentences:

*Arnab nampak kura-kura sedang merangkak dekat tebing sungai.*

A rabbit saw a tortoise crawling near the river bank.

*Apabila kami masuk ke dalam hutan itu, kami mendengar riang-riang hutan berbunyi di sana sini.*

When we entered the jungle, we heard cicadas chirping here and there.

*Orang-orang di Pantai Timur suka bermain layang-layang.*

The people in the East Coast like to play kites.

*Kuih ondeh-ondeh dibuat daripada tepung pulut, bentuknya bulat, didalamnya ada gula, dan di luarnya ditabur dengan kelapa parut.*

Ondeh-ondeh is made from glutinous flour, is round in shape with sugar inside, and coated with scraped coconut outside.

## A Word to Indicate Plurality

There is a word which may be placed before a Noun to indicate Plurality. The word is *para*. It can be used only with certain Nouns that refer to a group of persons. Examples:

<i>para pelajar</i>	a group of students
<i>para seniman</i>	a group of artists
<i>para guru</i>	a group of teachers
<i>para pendengar</i>	a group of listeners
<i>para penonton</i>	a group of spectators
<i>para wakil</i>	a group of representatives
<i>para peserta</i>	a group of participants
<i>para dermawan</i>	a group of philanthropists
<i>para hakim</i>	a group of judges
<i>para hadirin</i>	a group of audience
<i>para sasterawan</i>	a group of writers
<i>para pelancong</i>	a group of tourists

**Note:**

1. It would be wrong to say *dua orang para guru*. This is redundant. You should either say *dua orang guru* (two teachers) or *para guru* (the teachers as a whole).
2. It is also not usual to use the word *para* with people who deserve no respect, such as robbers (*penyamun*), thieves (*pencuri*), and traitors (*pengkhianat*).

Examples in sentences:

***Para*** pelajar patutlah sedar bahawa kewajipan mereka bukan sahaja menuntut ilmu tetapi juga berkhidmat kepada negara.

Students should realise that their responsibility is not only to seek knowledge but also to serve the country.

***Para*** wakil ke persidangan itu semuanya telah sampai.

All the delegates to the conference have arrived.

Apabila keputusan diumumkan, ***para*** hadirin sekalian bertepuk tangan.

When the result was announced, all those present clapped their hands.

***Para*** peserta dikehendaki membawa baju mandi masing-masing.

Participants are required to bring their own swimsuits.

Jawatankuasa Pasar Ria mengucapkan terima kasih kepada ***para*** dermawan atas sumbangan mereka.

The Fun Fair Committee thanked all the donors for their contribution.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*ikhtiar*, ways and means  
*pendidikan*, education  
*kesatuan sekerja*, trade  
union

*tanggungjawab*,  
responsibility  
*waktu malam*, night-time  
*waktu siang*, day-time

### Miscellaneous

*bagus*, good  
*dengan sebulat suara*,  
unanimously

*sekeluarga*, of the same  
family  
*terhadap*, towards

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise.

1. Butterflies come out in the day; fireflies at night.
2. Tortoises and river turtles are of the same family.
3. Since he was a child, his ambition is to become a doctor.
4. Children like to eat french fries.
5. The judges (as a group) gave a decision unanimously.
6. This journal is good for university students.
7. Teachers (as a whole) have heavy responsibilities towards children's education.
8. Workers (as a whole) are advised to join a trade union.
9. The NUTP is an association for teachers .
10. We should find ways and means to draw tourists to our country.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Kupu-kupu keluar pada waktu siang; kelip-kelip pada waktu malam.*
2. *Kura-kura dan labi-labi adalah sekeluarga.*
3. *Semenjak dia kanak-kanak, cita-citanya ialah hendak menjadi doktor.*
4. *Kanak-kanak suka makan kentang goreng.*
5. *Para hakim memberi keputusan dengan sebulat suara.*
6. *Jurnal ini bagus untuk para mahasiswa.*
7. *Para guru mempunyai tanggungjawab berat terhadap pendidikan kanak-kanak.*
8. *Para pekerja dinasihatkan memasuki kesatuan sekerja.*
9. *KPPK ialah sebuah persatuan untuk para guru.*
10. *Kita hendaklah mencari ikhtiar (untuk) menarik para pelancong ke negara kita.*

## NOUNS (Derivative Nouns)

Derivative Nouns can be formed in several ways, namely by putting:

1. Prefix *pe*
2. Suffix *an*
3. Affix *pe ... an*
4. Affix *per ... an*
5. Affix *ke ... an*

1. Prefix *pe* can be attached to some Nouns, to some Verbs, and to a few Adjectives. Examples:

### Nouns

*kedai*, shop  
*ladang*, farm  
*kebun*, garden  
*nasihat*, advice  
*rokok*, cigarette  
*berita*, news  
*derma*, donation

### Verbs

*baca*, read

### Derivative Nouns

*pekedai*, a shopkeeper  
*peladang*, a farmer  
*pekebun*, a gardener  
*penasihat*, an adviser  
*perokok*, a smoker  
*pemberita*, a reporter  
*penderma*, a donor

### Derivative Nouns

*pebaca*, a reader



*tulis*, to write

*lari*, to run

*sapu*, to sweep

*curi*, to steal

*buka*, to open

*dengar*, to listen

*nyanyi*, to sing

*bungkus*, to wrap

*kayuh*, to row

*penulis*, a writer or an author

*pelari*, a runner

*penyapu*, a sweeper,  
a broom

*pencuri*, a thief

*pembuka*, an opener

*pendengar*, a listener

*penyanyi*, a singer

*pembungkus*, a wrapper

*pengayuh*, an oar, a rower

### Adjectives

*besar*, large

*murah*, generous, cheap

*manis*, sweet

*tawar*, tasteless

*panas*, hot

*sejuk*, cold

*aman*, peaceful

### Derivative Nouns

*pembesar*, a high ranking person, an enlarger

*pemurah*, a generous person

*pemanis*, a charm to render attraction

*penawar*, an antidote

*pemanas*, a heater

*penyejuk*, a cooler

*pengaman*, a peace-maker

2. The suffix *an* can be attached to the roots of some Verbs.  
Examples:

### Verbs

*tulis*, to write

*minum*, to drink

*makan*, to eat

*lawat*, to visit

*nyanyi*, to sing

*tarik*, to pull

*soal*, to question

*jemput*, to invite

*cukur*, to shave

### Derivative Nouns

*tulisan*, writing

*minuman*, a drink

*makanan*, a food

*lawatan*, a visit

*nyanyian*, a song

*tarikan*, an attraction

*soalan*, a question

*jemputan*, an invitation

*cukuran*, a shave

*cium*, to kiss  
*peluk*, to hug  
*pecah*, to break

*ciuman*, a kiss  
*pelukan*, a hug  
*pecahan*, a fraction,  
fragments

3. The affix *pe ...an* can be attached to Nouns, to the roots of many Verbs and Adjectives. Examples:

**Nouns**

*lawan*, opponent  
*rumah*, house  
*layar*, sail of a boat  
*nama*, name  
*pasar*, market

**Derivative Nouns**

*pelawanan*, contest  
*perumahan*, housing  
*pelayaran*, voyage  
*penamaan*, nomination  
*pemasaran*, marketing

**Verbs**

*pergi*, to go  
*periksa*, to examine  
*pilih*, to select  
*umum*, to announce

**Derivative Nouns**

*pemergian*, departure  
*pemeriksaan*, investigation  
*pemilihan*, selection  
*pengumuman*,  
announcement

**Adjectives**

*bersih*, clean  
*kotor*, dirty  
*terang*, bright  
*jelas*, clear

**Derivative Nouns**

*pembersihan*, cleansing  
*pengotoran*, pollution  
*penerangan*, information  
*penjelasan*, clarification

4. The affix *per ...an* can be attached to some Nouns and Verbs. Examples:

**Nouns**

*sekolah*, school  
*satu*, one  
*air*, water  
*jalan*, road

**Derivative Nouns**

*persekolahan*, schooling  
*persatuan*, association  
*pe`airan*, waters  
*pe`alanan*, a journey

**Verbs**

*kahwin*, marry  
*cakap*, to speak  
*lantik*, to appoint  
*kelahi*, to fight

**Derivative Nouns**

*perkahwinan*, marriage  
*percakapan*, talk  
*perlantikan*, appointment  
*perkelahian*, a fight

5. The affix *ke ... an* can be attached to some Nouns, Verbs and Adjectives. Examples:

**Nouns**

*menteri*, minister  
*wang*, money  
*satu*, one  
*manusia*, human-being

**Derivative Nouns**

*kementerian*, ministry  
*kewangan*, finance  
*kesatuan*, union  
*kemanusiaan*, humanity

**Verbs**

*naik*, to ride  
*jatuh*, to fall  
*lahir*, to be born  
*bakar*, to burn  
*datang*, to come

**Derivative Nouns**

*kenaikan*, means of transport  
*kelahiran*, birth  
*kebakaran*, a fire  
*kedatangan*, arrival  
*kejatuhan*, fall, downfall

**Adjectives**

*cantik*, beautiful  
*maju*, progressive  
*berani*, brave  
*laju*, fast

**Derivative Nouns**

*kecantikan*, beauty  
*kemajuan*, progress  
*keberanian*, bravery  
*kelajuan*, speed

Study the following sentences:

*Pemberita-pemberita akhbar membuat laporan mengenai pelancaran Minggu Belia yang bermula semalam.*

Newspaper reporters made reports on the launching of Youth Week which began yesterday.

*Syarikat perumahan itu mendapat keuntungan sepuluh juta ringgit tahun lepas.*

The housing company made a profit of ten million ringgit last year.

*Kemerdekaan membawa kemajuan dan kemakmuran kepada rakyat.*

Independence brought progress and prosperity to the people.

*Kesatuan sekerja bukan untuk melancarkan mogok tetapi untuk menjaga kepentingan pekerja.*

A trade union is not for launching strikes but to look after the interest of workers.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*kemudahan*, facilities

*jajahan*, colony

*pencapaian*, achievement

*pembangunan*, development

*kehendak*, demands

*pertandingan*, competition

*pengguna*, user

*tuan rumah*, host

### Verbs

*menawarkan*, offers

*dianjurkan*, sponsored

*berlangsung*, to take place

*disediakan*, is prepared

### Adjectives

*penting*, important

*ringkas*, simple

*istimewa*, special

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Sukan Komanwel ke-16*

*Sukan Komanwel adalah satu pertandingan sukan yang dianjurkan istimewa untuk negara-negara yang pernah menjadi tanah jajahan British.*

*Sukan Komanwel ke-16 telah berlangsung di Malaysia dari 10-20 September 1998. Malaysia merupakan negara Asia pertama yang menjadi tuan rumah sukan ini.*

*Perkampungan Sukom 98 yang terletak di sebelah Kompleks Sukan Negara di Bukit Jalil telah disediakan untuk para atlit dan pegawai. Kompleks Sukan Negara mempunyai 4,000 tempat duduk serta pelbagai kemudahan lain untuk semua acara jimenastik, sukan hoki lelaki dan renang.*

*Selain itu, kemudahan kenderaan seperti perkhidmatan komuter dan Transit Aliran Ringan (LRT) telah disediakan. Kemudahan lain seperti telekomunikasi, Internet, pemancar penyiaran dan komputer juga berfungsi dengan lancar dan mencukupi untuk menjayakan sukan ini.*

### **Exercise**

Translate the following passage into Bahasa Melayu. After you have done it, check with the correct translation after the exercise:

### **TM Net**

TM Net is the Internet access provided by Telekom Malaysia. This Internet access network offers Internet users better facilities and nationwide coverage at a competitive price and in a simpler package. It provides access to the rural areas and schools as well. TM Net is constantly upgrading itself to further meet the demands of users and also in the development of Multimedia Super Corridor (MSC).

Now check your translation with the one below:

### ***TM Net***

*TM Net merupakan satu rangkaian penyedia perkhidmatan Internet oleh Telekom Malaysia. Rangkaian perhubungan Internet ini menawarkan kemudahan yang lebih inovatif bagi pengguna Internet, serta liputan luas ke seluruh negara pada harga yang berpatutan dan pakej yang ringkas. Ia juga menghubungkan anda ke kawasan luar bandar dan juga ke sekolah-sekolah. TM Net sentiasa berusaha untuk memajukan perkhidmatannya bagi memenuhi kehendak pengguna dan berkembang ke arah pembangunan Koridor Raya Multimedia.*

## LESSON 39

### VERBS

#### (The Imperative; Suffix -kan)

In this lesson, you will learn how to form the Imperative in Bahasa Melayu. It is done as follows:

1. Use Class 1 Verbs in their original form. Examples:

*Pergi!*

Go

*Awak **duduk** di situ!*

You **sit** here!

*Jangan **pulang** sebelum pukul sepuluh.*

Don't **go** back before ten o'clock.

2. Drop the prefix *me* in Class II Verbs. Examples:

***Basuh** kain ini!*

**Wash** this cloth!

***Halau** lembu-lembu itu!*

**Drive** away those cows!

***Jawab** soalan ini jika (awak) boleh!*

**Answer** this question if you can!

**Berus** gigi (*awak*) tiap-tiap hari.

**Brush** your teeth every day.

**Rotan** budak jahat itu!

**Cane** that naughty boy!

3. Keep the same form for Class III Verbs. Examples:

**Berdiri** di sini!

**Stand** here!

**Jangan berjalan** di atas rumput.

Don't **walk** on the grass.

**Berjabat** tangan dengan dia!

**Shake** hands with him!

4. Drop the prefix *me* for Class IV Verbs. Examples:

**Tinggalkan** surat-surat itu di atas meja.

**Leave** the letters on the table.

**Sampaikan** salam saya kepadanya.

Convey my greetings to him.

**Susukan** budak (*bayi*) ini.

Feed this baby with milk.

**Kosongkan** bakul itu.

Empty the basket.

In order to make the request, polite or mild in form, the suffix *lah* is added. Examples:

*Awak* **tidurlah** di sini!

You **sleep** here!



**Balaslah surat abangmu itu!**

Reply your brother's letter!

**Bersenamlah tiap-tiap pagi supaya badan kamu sentiasa sihat.**

Exercise every morning so that your body will be healthy.

**Keluarkanlah semua buah manggis itu supaya dapat kita kira.**

Take out all the mangosteens so that we can count them.

### The Suffix *kan*

When the suffix *kan* is used with Verbs, it also indicates a sort of a favour, that is the action is done for the sake of the speaker.

Observe the following sentences:

*Awak hendak ke kedai? **Belikan** saya ubat batuk.*

Are you going to the shop? **Buy** me some cough mixture.

***Bawakan** saya segelas air.*

**Bring** me a glass of water.

***Padamkan** lampu itu; saya tak sampai suisnya.*

**Put off** the light for me; I can't reach the switch.

***Bacakan** surat ini; tulisannya halus benar.*

**Read** this letter for me; the writing is too fine.

### Sila and Tolong

In English, you use the word *please* if you want to be polite in making a request. In Bahasa Melayu, *silalah* or *tolonglah* are used but each has its own special meaning.

The word *tolong* is used when you get some benefit out of the action; whereas *silalah* you do not.

Study these sentences:

*Sila* kembalikan buku itu.

**Please** return the book.

*Tolong* kembalikan buku itu.

**Please** return the book (for my sake).

*Sila* duduk.

**Please** sit down.

*Tolong* duduk.

**Please** sit down (for my sake—because you are obstructing my view, perhaps).

*Sila* buka muka surat 47.

**Please** turn to page 47.

*Tolong* bukakan tin ini.

**Please** open this tin (for me).

*Sila* bersihkan meja masing-masing.

**Please** clean your own table.

*Tolong* bersihkan meja saya.

**Please** clean my table (for me).

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*batuk*, cough

*bungkus*, packet

*pintu pagar*, gate

*muka surat*, page

*salam*, greetings

*suis*, switch

*terima kasih*, thanks

*ubat batuk*, cough mixture

### Verbs

*biar*, to let

*bangunkan*, to wake up

*berehat*, to rest

*kira*, to count

*nampaknya*, to seem

*rebus*, to boil

## Adjectives

*berat*, heavy  
*berkunci*, locked

*letih*, tired  
*sihat*, healthy

## Conversation

- Timah:* *Mak! Mak! Makcik Esah datang!*  
*Emak:* *Pergilah bukakan pintu pagar tu!*  
*Timah:* *Pintu pagar tak berkuncikah, mak?*  
*Emak:* *Tak berkunci, pergilah bukakan.*  
*Timah:* *Baiklah, mak.*  
*(Timah membukakan pintu pagar.)*  
*Sila masuk, Makcik.*  
*Makcik Esah:* *Terima kasih. Mak kau buat apa?*  
*Timah:* *Mak tengah (me) masak .... Apa Makcik bawa ni? Berat nampaknya!*  
*Makcik Esah:* *Buah mangga ada; buah rambutan ada.*  
*Timah:* *Bak Timah bawakan.*  
*Makcik Esah:* *Timah bawa yang ini; biar Makcik bawa yang ini.*  
*Emak:* *Ah, Kak Esah! Sila naik!*  
*Makcik Esah:* *Terima kasih.*

## Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation below:

1. Please sit on your own chair.
2. Pour the oil into the pan.
3. Please bring me the helmet.
4. Don't disclose any information to an unknown caller.
5. Don't smoke in this building.

6. Please show me the way to the Kuala Lumpur International Airport (KLIA).
7. Don't park your vehicle here.
8. Bring a menu for us.
9. When you are tired, please have a rest.
10. Please wake me up at five o'clock.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Sila duduk di kerusi masing-masing.*
2. *Masukkan minyak ke dalam kualiti.*
3. *Tolong bawakan topi keledar.*
4. *Jangan berikan sebarang maklumat kepada pemanggil yang tidak dikenali.*
5. *Jangan hisap rokok dalam bangunan ini.*
6. *Tolong tunjukkan kepada saya arah ke Lapangan Terbang Antarabangsa Kuala Lumpur.*
7. *Jangan letak kenderaan di sini.*
8. *Bawakan menu untuk kami.*
9. *Apabila awak letih sila (lah) berehat.*
10. *Tolongkejutkan saya pada pukul lima.*

## LESSON 40

### VERBS (Verbs of Emotion)

There are certain words in the Verb Class which express emotion. Examples of such words are:

<i>benci</i> , to hate	<i>takut</i> , to be afraid of
<i>cemburu</i> , to be jealous of	<i>suka</i> , to like
<i>cinta</i> , to love (with passion)	<i>dengki</i> , to envy
<i>marah</i> , to be angry with	<i>gemar</i> , to be fond of
<i>sayang</i> , to love, to be fond of	<i>kasih</i> , to be fond of

When these words are used in sentences transitively (i.e. with an object), the word *akan* should be placed immediately after each word. In many cases, the word *akan* is shortened to *kan* and joined to the Verb. Observe the following examples:

*Dalam filem "Titanic", Rose kasih akan Jack, or Rose kasihkan Jack.*

In the movie "Titanic", Rose **loves** Jack.

*Dia marah akan (marahkan) saya sebab saya lambat memulangkan bukunya.*

He is **angry with** me because I returned his book late.

*Aminah sayangkan Busu tetapi Busu bencikan Aminah.*  
Aminah **loves** Busu but Busu **hates** Aminah.

*Jangan cemburukan kejayaan orang lain.*  
Don't **envy** other people's success.

*Sayangkan anak tangan-tangankan; sayangkan bini tinggal-tinggalkan.* (A Malay saying)

If you **love** your child beat him; if you love your wife stay away from home. (occasionally!).

*Marahkan pijat-pijat kelambu dibakar.* (A Malay proverb)

You are **angry** with the bed-bugs; you burn the mosquito-net. (literally means: a man, angry with the children destroyed the whole house).

The above words can also be used as Auxiliary Verbs. In this case, the word *akan* may be dropped. Observe the following sentences:

*Mereka suka melihat orang bermain gasing.*

They **like** to watch people playing tops.

*Saya benci mendengar kata-kata kotor seperti itu.*

I **hate** to hear such vulgar words.

*Orang Malaysia gemar makan masakan yang pedas.*

Malaysians **like** to eat hot (spicy) food.

*Kami ingin membaca buku komik itu.*

We **long to** read that comic book.

*Dia sayang keluarganya.*

He **loves** his family.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*sungai*, river  
*tebing*, bank (of river)  
*sumber*, source  
*pendidikan*, education

*alam sekitar*, environment  
*kesedaran*, awareness  
*pelajar*, student

### Verbs

*mencintai*, to love  
*dilakukan*, to carry out  
*menyemaikan*, to sow  
*sayangkan*, to love

*menanamkan*, to instil  
*menjayakan*, to make  
successful  
*mengindahkannya*, to beautify

### Adjectives

*tepat*, precise  
*ringkas*, brief

*rapi*, thorough  
*terpenting*, most important

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Cintai Sungai Kita*

*Itulah slogan yang sering terpampang di setiap tebing sungai utama di negara kita. Pernyataan tersebut walaupun pendek dan ringkas, tetapi membawa maksud yang cukup besar untuk menyatakan betapa pentingnya sungai dalam kehidupan kita.*

*Kempen mencintai sungai memang tepat dilaksanakan dalam waktu seperti sekarang memandangkan kelangsungan sungai sebagai sumber air terpenting semakin terancam.*

*Langkah paling awal yang dikira berkesan ialah menanam dan menyemaikan sikap sayangkan alam khususnya sungai. Saluran terbaik untuk menggerakkan kesedaran ini hendaklah datang daripada program pendidikan alam sekitar.*

*Justeru, sekolah dan institusi pendidikan hendaklah mengambil inisiatif utama menjayakannya. Antara program yang boleh dilakukan ialah pihak sekolah cuba menanamkan sikap cinta dan sayangkan sungai. Program seperti ini sudah pasti dapat memberikan kesedaran kepada para pelajar untuk menyayangi dan berusaha mengindahkan sungai.*

### Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation below:

1. Juliet loves Romeo very much.
2. A wife who is jealous of her husband is never happy.
3. Children like to eat at MacDonald's.
4. A good citizen must love his country.
5. I am afraid of walking in the dark.
6. All of us like to listen to love songs.
7. I hate him because he does not keep his promise.
8. Don't envy him, I know he is a sincere man.
9. If you like children; children will like you.
10. He is afraid of dogs; I am afraid of snakes.

Now check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Juliet sangat cinta akan Romeo.*
2. *Seorang isteri yang cemburukan suaminya tidak pernah gembira.*
3. *Kanak-kanak suka makan di MacDonald's.*
4. *Warganegara yang baik mesti kasih akan negaranya.*
5. *Saya takut berjalan dalam gelap.*
6. *Kami semua suka mendengar lagu-lagu cinta.*



7. *Saya benci akan dia kerana dia tidak menepati janji (nya).*
8. *Jangan dengkikan dia; saya tahu dia orang jujur.*
9. *Kalau awak sukakan kanak-kanak; kanak-kanak akan sukakan awak.*
10. *Dia takutkan anjing; saya takutkan ular.*

## LESSON 41

### VERBS

#### (Class VII Verbs)

There is another class of Verbs which you should learn—the Class VII Verbs. These Verbs contain the prefixes *men* and *per* and the suffix *kan*. They are formed from certain Class I Verbs, the roots of certain Class II and Class III Verbs, a few Nouns and Adjectives. Examples:

#### Class I

*naik*

*hidup*

*lepas*

#### Class VII

*mempertinggi*, to raise

*memperhidupkan*, to

revalidate; to renew

*memperleaskan*, to set

free

#### Class II

*(men)jamu*

*(men)dengar*

*(me)lihat*

*(me)nyoal*

*(me)nunjuk*

#### Class VII

*mempertjamukan*, to feed

sumptuously

*mempertdengarkan*, to

make people listen

*mempertlihatkan*, to display

to manifest

*mempertsoalkan*, to question

*mempertunjukkan*, to

*(meng)hitung*

demonstrate  
*memperhitungkan*, to  
consider

**Class III**

*(ber)juang*

**Class VII**

*memperjuangkan*, to fight  
for

*(ber)cakap*

*mempercakapkan*, to talk  
about

*(ber)giat*

*mempergiatkan*, to activate

*(ber)dagang*

*memperdagangkan*, to trade

*(ber)bincang*

*memperbincangkan*, to  
discuss

**Nouns**

*isteri* (wife)

**Class VII**

*memperisterikan*, to take as  
wife

*suami* (husband)

*mempersuamikan*, to take  
as husband

*hamba* (slave)

*memperhambakan*, to  
enslave

*budak* (child)

*memperbudakkan*, to treat  
as a child

*sembah* (present)

*mempersembahkan*, to  
present

**Adjectives**

*besar* (large)

**Class VII**

*memperbesarkan*, to  
enlarge

*kecil* (small)

*memperkecilkan*, to  
belittle

*cepat* (quick)

*mempercepatkan*, to speed  
up

*cantik* (beautiful)

*mempercantikkan*, to  
beautify

*elok* (good; fine)

*memperelokkan*, to improve

*hebat* (grand)

*memperhebatkan*, to intensify; to act vigorously

Examples in sentences:

*Kebanyakan ahli **mempersoalkan** keuntungan yang diperolehi tahun lepas.*

Most of the members **question** the profits gained last year.

*Kesatuan akan **memperjuangkan** hak 3,000 orang pekerja kilang itu.*

The union will **fight for** the rights of 3,000 workers of that factory.

*Baginda telah membawa Nila Kesuma ke istananya lalu **memperisterikannya**.*

He (the King) brought Nila Kesuma to his palace and **married** her.

*Beberapa badan berkanun telah ditubuhkan dengan tujuan untuk **mempercepatkan** projek-projek pembangunan negara.*

A number of statutory bodies were established with the objective of **speeding up** the country's development projects.

## The Passive Form

If the passive form is to be used, you merely drop the prefix *me* and put *di* in its place. Examples:

*Drama yang bertajuk "Anthony and Cleopatra" **dipersembahkan** oleh pelajar-pelajar Tingkatan V.*

The drama entitled "Anthony and Cleopatra" was presented by the Form 5 students.

*Lesen awak yang telah mati itu terpaksa **diperhidupkan** semula.*

Your expired licence has to be renewed.

*Banyak hasil negeri ini **diperdagangkan** ke negara asing.*

A lot of the products of this country are traded in foreign countries.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*acara*, programme

*baginda*, he (ruler)

*belia*, youth (male)

*beliawanis*, youth (female)

*firma*, firm

*fitnah*, slander

*Hari Kebangsaan*, National Day

*istana*, palace

*kaum*, community

*kebudayaan*, culture

*kemuncak*, climax

*lapisan*, class; strata

*lesen*, licence

*masyarakat*, society

*nasib*, destiny

*pasukan*, troupe, team

*pameran*, exhibition

*perayaan*, celebration

*perbarisan*, parade

*peserta*, participant

*rancangan*, project;

programme

*rugi*, loss

*tabik hormat*, salute

*tarian*, dance

*tentera*, military

*lukisan*, drawing

### Verbs

*bergerak*, to march in procession

*melintas*, to march pass; to go across

### Adjectives

*asing*, foreign

*cergas*, active

*kemas*, smart

*menarik*, interesting

*raksasa*, mammoth

*sukarela*, voluntary

## Adverbs

*baru-baru ini*, recently  
*dengan mudah*, with ease

*dengan sepenuhnya*, fully  
*sepanjang jalan*, along the  
road

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Perayaan Hari Kebangsaan*

*Para belia dan beliawanis dari berbilang kaum telah memperlihatkan suatu perbarisan yang sungguh menarik di ibu negara, Kuala Lumpur baru-baru ini.*

*Mereka berarak bersama-sama dengan beberapa pasukan lain dalam acara kemuncak perayaan Hari Kebangsaan. Perbarisan raksasa yang mengandungi 10,000 orang yang mewakili semua lapisan kaum dan masyarakat itu bermula dari Stadium Merdeka.*

*Belia-belia yang berpakaian kemas berjalan cergas di sepanjang jalan yang telah ditetapkan. Semasa melintas di hadapan Duli Yang Maha Mulia Seri Paduka Baginda yang di-Pertuan Agong mereka semua memberi tabik hormat kepada baginda. Perbarisan raksasa itu disertai juga oleh pasukan tentera, polis, kakitangan kerajaan dan pasukan sukarela.*

## Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after the exercise:

1. You must renew this licence before you can drive again.
2. A cultural troupe from Jakarta will perform Indonesian dances tomorrow night.

3. The firm will trade in various goods, made from rubber.
4. Radio and TV Malaysia will present the programme once a week.
5. Don't belittle him; he can lift 100 kg with ease.
6. The Municipal Council is beautifying our city for the National Day celebration.
7. I cannot fully understand what was discussed.
8. He was angry because he was treated like a child.
9. Profit and loss should be considered before the project is launched.
10. A wide range of computers and digital cameras were displayed at the exhibition.

Check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Awak mesti memperhidupkan lesen ini sebelum awak boleh memandu semula.*
2. *Suatu pasukan kebudayaan dari Jakarta akan mempertunjukkan tarian-tarian Indonesia malam esok.*
3. *Firma itu akan memperdagangkan berjenis-jenis barang yang dibuat daripada getah.*
4. *Radio dan TV Malaysia akan mempersembahkan rancangan itu seminggu sekali.*
5. *Jangan memperkecilkan dia; dia boleh mengangkat 100 kg dengan mudah.*
6. *Majlis Perbandaran sedang mempercantikkan bandaraya kita untuk perayaan Hari Kebangsaan.*
7. *Saya tidak faham dengan sepenuhnya apa yang diperbincangkan.*
8. *Dia marah kerana dia diperbudakkan.*
9. *Untung dan rugi hendaklah diperhitungkan sebelum projek itu dilancarkan.*

10. *Pelbagai komputer dan kamera digital dipertunjukkan di pameran itu.*



## LESSON 42

### Verbs (Class VIII Verbs)

There is one more class of Verbs to be learnt. It is the Class VIII Verbs. These Verbs take the prefix *ber* and the suffix *an*. They are of two categories. The first category Verbs indicate a sense of continuity in the act, and sometimes with a sense of plurality as well. Examples:

<i>berterbangan</i>	to fly about
<i>berkejaran</i>	to chase about
<i>berpanjangan</i>	to go on
<i>bergelimpangan</i>	to be sprawled
<i>berkeliaran</i>	to roam about
<i>bertaburan</i>	to scatter about
<i>berciciran</i>	to drop about
<i>berterusan</i>	to go on unceasingly
<i>berlompatan</i>	to jump about
<i>bercakaran</i>	to be at loggerheads
<i>berdampingan</i>	to be in close touch
<i>berkekalan</i>	to last

Examples in sentences:

*Surat-surat di atas meja habis berterbangan.*

All the letters on the table were blown away.

*Adalah diharapkan persahabatan kita akan **berpanjangan**.*

It is hoped that our friendship will last.

*Mayat manusia **bergelimpangan** di medan perang.*

Corpses strewn the battlefield.

*Kanak-kanak itu **berlompatan** dengan gembira kerana mereka mendapat cuti sehari esok.*

The children jumped about (or in groups) with joy because they have been given a holiday tomorrow.

*Kita tidak akan berjaya dalam perjuangan jika kita **bercakaran** sesama sendiri.*

We shall not succeed in our fight if we are at loggerheads with one another.

*Pada waktu malam, binatang liar **berkeliaran** di dalam taman itu.*

At night, wild animals roam the park.

The second category has the root reduplicated, and these Verbs indicate reciprocal action with a sense of repetition or intensity. Examples:

*berpukul-pukulan*

to beat each other repeatedly

*bercium-ciuman*

to kiss each other many times

*bertangis-tangisan*

to weep for one another with intensity

*berkasih-kasih*

to love each other intensely

*bersalam-salam*

to shake hands with many people

*bermusuh-musuhan*

to be at enmity

*bertolong-tolongan*

to help each other

*bertembak-tembakan*

to shoot at one another repeatedly

Examples in sentences:

*Pekerja ladang itu berpukul-pukulan kerana seekor lembu.*  
The estate workers fought (hit each other) because of a cow.

*Pelajar-pelajar itu bercium-ciuman dengan ibu bapa dan sanak-saudara sebelum naik kapal terbang.*  
The students and their parents and relatives were kissing one another before entering the plane.

*Dua buah negara itu telah bermusuhan-musuhan selama hampir-hampir 20 tahun.*  
The two countries have been at enmity with each other for almost 20 years.

*Pasukan keselamatan kita telah bertembak-tembakan dengan penjahat-penjahat di tepi hutan itu.*  
Our security forces and the terrorists were exchanging fire at the fringe of the jungle.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*anak ayam*, chicken  
*bekalan*, provisions  
*bintang*, star  
*bunyi*, sound  
*celah*, crevice  
*cuaca*, weather  
*danau*, pool  
*gagak*, crow  
*keluang*, flying fox  
*keping kertas*, bit of paper

*kuangkuit*, pheasant  
*langit*, sky  
*penonton*, spectators  
*penyamun*, robber  
*pondok*, hut  
*rimba*, primeval jungle  
*sentul*, a jungle fruit  
*stesen*, station  
*syarikat*, company  
*tempat bersembunyi*,  
hiding-place

### Verbs

*berkelip-kelipan*, to twinkle

*menuju*, to go towards

<i>bermalam</i> , to spend the night	<i>merebahkan diri</i> , (lit, to fall down), to lie down
<i>bersahut-sahutan</i> , calling	<i>terlena</i> , to be fast asleep
<i>mengerak</i> , to caw	<i>berpusu-pusu</i> , surging forward

### Miscellaneous

<i>lebat</i> , plentiful	<i>agak</i> , rather
<i>letih</i> , tired	<i>di sekeliling</i> , around
<i>pula</i> , again; then	

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Pondok di Tengah Hutan*

*Di tepi danau di tengah hutan itu ada sebuah pondok. Di situlah kami bermalam. Cuaca malam itu agak baik. Bintang di langit berkelip-kelipan. Setelah kami makan bekal yang kami bawa itu kami pun merebahkan diri.*

*Sebentar kemudian kami dengar binatang-binatang hutan berlari-larian dan berkejar-kejaran di luar pondok menuju ke danau itu. Apabila kami melihat mereka keluar dari celah-celah dinding pondok itu kami nampak binatang-binatang itu berpusu-pusu menuju ke danau itu. Mereka minum air di situ. Anak-anak binatang berlompat-lompatan di sekeliling ibu mereka.*

*Apabila kami memandang ke atas pula kami nampak banyak keluang berterbangan di sekeliling sebatang pokok sentul yang sedang lebat buahnya.*

*Jauh di tengah rimba kami dengar pula bunyi burung kuangkit bersahut-sahutan. Kami berasa sangat takut, tetapi oleh kerana tersangat letih kami pun terlena.*

## Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after the exercise. See that every Verb contains the prefix *ber* and suffix *an*:

1. The fruits which he was carrying fell in the street.
2. The two companies are always in close touch.
3. Our friendship will last.
4. After the show, the spectators roam about in the town.
5. Bits of tickets are scattered in the station.
6. When they met, they shook hands.
7. They love each other like lovers in story books.
8. The police and the robbers exchanged fire for an hour.
9. When the chickens heard the crow caw, they ran away to their hiding place.
10. The people in the village are always helping one another.

Check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Buah-buahan yang dibawanya berciciran di jalan.*
2. *Dua buah syarikat itu sentiasa berdampingan.*
3. *Persahabatan kita akan berkekalan.*
4. *Selepas pertunjukkan itu penonton-penonton berkeliaran di dalam pekan.*
5. *Keping-keping tiket bertaburan di dalam stesen itu.*
6. *Apabila mereka berjumpa, mereka bersalam-salam.*
7. *Mereka berkasih-kasih seperti sepasang kekasih dalam buku-buku cerita.*
8. *Polis dan perompak telah bertembak-tembakan selama sejam.*

9. *Apabila anak-anak ayam itu mendengar burung gagak itu mengerak, mereka berlarian mencari tempat bersembunyi.*
10. *Orang-orang di kampung itu sentiasa bertolong-tolongan.*

### DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES

Many words from other parts of speech, such as Nouns, Verbs, etc, can be used as Adjectives. These words are called Derivative Adjectives. Examples:

#### Nouns

<i>meja besi</i>	steel desk (table)
<i>piala emas</i>	gold cup
<i>susu tepung</i>	powdered milk
<i>benang sutera</i>	silk thread
<i>harga getah</i>	price of rubber
<i>minyak kereta</i>	motor oil
<i>cawan kopi</i>	coffee cup
<i>tin coklat</i>	chocolate tin
<i>kaki kayu</i>	wooden leg
<i>kotak rokok</i>	cigarette box

The words in bold are the Adjectives.

#### Nouns with the prefix *ber*

<i>peristiwa bersejarah</i>	historical event
<i>pemuda bersemangat</i>	spirited youth
<i>jalan berbatu</i>	metalled road
<i>pokok berbunga</i>	flowering plant

<i>kawasan berbukit</i>	hilly area
<i>buah berair</i>	juicy fruit
<i>rumah berderet</i>	terrace house

### Verbs (with and without prefixes)

<i>meja tulis</i>	writing table
<i>lampu tidur</i>	sleeping lamp
<i>jalan naik</i>	up-going road
<i>peraduan menyanyi</i>	singing contest
<i>bilik menunggu</i>	waiting room
<i>waktu bekerja</i>	working hours
<i>perpustakaan bergerak</i>	mobile library
<i>nanas berkulap</i>	skinned pineapple
<i>bahan bercetak</i>	printed matter
<i>siaran terbatas</i>	limited circulation
<i>barang-barang terkawal</i>	controlled items
<i>rahsia terbuka</i>	open secret
<i>penghormatan terakhir</i>	last respects

Examples in sentences:

*Piala emas* itu dihadiahkan oleh Tan Sri Abdul Malik.  
The **gold cup** was donated by Tan Sri Abdul Malik.

*Kain* itu dibuat daripada *benang sutera* yang cantik.  
The cloth is made from beautiful **silk thread**.

Kalau *harga getah* naik, orang-orang desa akan bergembira.

If the **price of rubber** goes up, the rural people will be happy.

*Rumah hartawan-hartawan* itu terletak di suatu *kawasan berbukit*.

The rich people's houses are located in a **hilly area**.



*Kerajaan bercadang hendak mengadakan lebih banyak lagi perpustakaan bergerak untuk kanak-kanak desa.*

The government plans to have more **mobile libraries** for rural children.

*Sebuah meja tulis terletak di sudut bilik itu.*

A **writing table** is placed in the corner of the room.

*Dalam peraduan menyanyi yang diadakan minggu lepas, Ella mendapat hadiah pertama.*

In a **singing contest** held last week, Ella won the first prize.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*pengunjung*, tourist  
*tong sampah*, dustbin  
*sampah*, rubbish  
*tandas awam*, public toilet  
*papan tanda*, notice board  
*hiasan*, decoration

*harta benda awam*, public property  
*pokok-pokok*, trees  
*kemudahan*, facilities  
*nasihat*, advice  
*amaran*, warning

### Verbs

*beristirahat*, to rest  
*memasang*, to set up; to fix  
*bersenam*, to do physical exercise  
*membuang*, to throw

*menenangkan*, to pacify one's mind  
*menyediakan*, to provide  
*dijaga*, to look after  
*merosakkan*, to damage; to destroy

### Miscellaneous

*rapi*, in order

*penting*, important

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Tempat Rekreasi*

*Tempat rekreasi adalah tempat untuk beristirahat atau bersenam untuk menenangkan fikiran. Kini didapati banyak rekreasi di negara ini tidak dijaga dengan rapi oleh para pengunjungnya. Mereka membuang sampah sesuka hati, merosakkan harta benda awam dan memusnahkan pokok-pokok hiasan.*

*Langkah yang pertama ialah pihak berkuasa tempat perlu menyediakan lebih banyak kemudahan asas seperti tong sampah, tandas awam dan tempat letak kenderaan.*

*Selain itu, pihak berkuasa tempatan perlu memasang lebih banyak papan tanda nasihat dan papan tanda amaran.*

*Memandangkan tempat-tempat rekreasi ini penting, maka sewajarnya ia dijaga dengan rapi.*

### **Exercise**

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after this exercise.

1. He keeps his money in a chocolate tin.
2. Those desks are made in a factory in Shah Alam.
3. Powdered milk is good not only for children but also for adults.
4. We need 300 coffee cups for the party.
5. Pineapples, mangoes and mangosteens are juicy fruits.
6. The sleeping lamp is placed near his bed.
7. The working hours of that factory is from 8.00 a.m. to 12.00 noon, and from 2.00 p.m. to 6.00 p.m.
8. The company will build more terrace houses for the public.

9. His marriage with the young secretary is an open secret.
10. The 16th Commonwealth Games in Kuala Lumpur was a historical event.

Check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Dia menyimpan wangnya di dalam tin coklat.*
2. *Meja-meja itu dibuat di sebuah kilang di Shah Alam.*
3. *Susu tepung bagus bukan sahaja untuk kanak-kanak tetapi juga untuk orang dewasa.*
4. *Kami memerlukan 300 cawan kopi untuk majlis itu.*
5. *Nanas, mangga dan manggis adalah buah-buahan berair.*
6. *Lampu tidur itu terletak dekat katilnya.*
7. *Waktu bekerja kilang itu ialah dari pukul 8.00 pagi hingga 12.00 tengah hari, dan dari pukul 2.00 petang hingga 6.00 petang.*
8. *Syarikat itu akan membina lagi rumah berderet untuk orang ramai.*
9. *Perkahwinan dengan setiausaha muda itu adalah satu rahsia terbuka.*
10. *Sukan Komanwel ke-16 di Kuala Lumpur adalah suatu peristiwa bersejarah.*

## LESSON 44

### ADVERB PHRASES

You know that an Adverb Phrase is a group of words that does the work of an Adverb. An Adverb Phrase, like an Adverb, modifies a Verb, an Adjective or another Adverb. Examples:

#### Adverb Phrases of Manner

<i>dengan tiba-tiba</i>	with suddenness; suddenly
<i>dengan berani</i>	with courage (bravery)
<i>dengan tidak bijak</i>	without wisdom
<i>dengan pantas</i>	with swiftness
<i>dengan cantik</i>	in a beautiful style
<i>dengan lemah-lembut</i>	in a gentle manner
<i>tanpa syarat</i>	without condition
<i>dengan fasih</i>	with eloquence
<i>dengan tulus ikhlas</i>	with sincerity
<i>mengikut jalan darat</i>	by land route
<i>dengan perasaan sedih</i>	with a feeling of sadness
<i>dengan tergesa-gesa</i>	in an impulsive manner, impulsively

#### Adverb Phrases of Time

<i>pada suatu ketika</i>	at one time
<i>pada suatu masa</i>	once upon a time

<i>pada zaman dahulu</i>	long ago
<i>baru-baru ini</i>	lately; recently
<i>dengan secepat mungkin</i>	as soon as possible
<i>hingga ke akhir hayat</i>	till the end of one's life
<i>dari detik ini</i>	from this moment
<i>hingga larut malam</i>	till late at night

### Adverb Phrases of Place

<i>di tempat itu</i>	at the place
<i>ke tempat lain</i>	to another place
<i>ke negara asing</i>	to a foreign country
<i>di pinggir hutan</i>	at the edge of the jungle
<i>di tengah lautan</i>	in the middle of the ocean
<i>di seluruh negara</i>	all over the country
<i>di sekitar bandaraya</i>	all round the city

Examples of Adverb Phrase in sentences:

***Dengan tiba-tiba, semua lampu di dalam dewan itu padam.***  
**Suddenly**, all the lamps in the hall went off.

***Orang yang beradab sopan bergerak dan bercakap dengan lemah-lembut.***  
A **well-mannered** person moves and speaks in a gentle manner.

***Mereka bercadang hendak pergi ke Mekah mengikut jalan darat.***  
They intend to go to Mecca following the **land route**.

***Pada suatu ketika, dia bekerja sebagai buruh di Jabatan Telekom***  
**At one time**, he was working as a labourer in the Telecoms Department.

***Menteri Besar melawat kampung kami baru-baru ini.***  
The Chief Minister visited our village **recently**.

*Budinya tidak akan aku lupa hingga akhir hayatku.*  
I will not forget his kindness **as long as I live.**

*Dia mendirikan sebuah pondok di pinggir hutan itu.*  
He erected a hut **at the edge of the jungle.**

*Hari Kebangsaan dirayakan di seluruh negara.*  
National Day was celebrated **all over the country.**

*Dia tinggal di sini dahulu, tetapi sekarang dia telah berpindah ke tempat lain.*  
He lived here before, but now he has moved **to another place.**

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*askar*, soldier  
*dewasa*, adult  
*gol*, goal  
*gua*, cave  
*jambatan*, bridge

*pangkat*, rank; grade  
*pantai*, beach  
*perahu*, boat  
*permainan*, games  
*senjata api*, fire-arms

### Verbs

*anggap*, to consider  
*dirobuhkan*, to be pulled  
down  
*lepas*, to release; to set free  
*terumbang-ambing*, to sway  
about

*menjaringkan*, to score (goal)  
*memberitahu*, to tell  
*menyaksikan*, to witness  
*naik pangkat*, to be promoted

### Miscellaneous

*rendang*, leaf (of trees)  
*larut malam*, late at night

*siapa-siapa*, anybody  
*tanpa*, without

## Exercise

Match the words in Column 1 and Column 2 below to form meaningful sentences.

Column 1	Column 2
<i>Askar-askar kita telah berjuang melawan penjahat</i>	<i>dengan secepat mungkin.</i>
<i>Encik Jackson sekarang boleh bertutur Bahasa Melayu</i>	<i>detik ini.</i>
<i>Saya berharap dapat tuan menjawab surat saya</i>	<i>di tengah laut.</i>
<i>Awak dianggap sebagai seorang dewasa mulai</i>	<i>dengan berani.</i>
<i>Dari tepi pantai, kami nampak sebuah perahu terumbang-ambing</i>	<i>di sekitar bandaraya.</i>
<i>Tidak lama lagi pokok-pokok rendang akan ditanam</i>	<i>dengan fasih.</i>

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translations below this exercise.

1. The Perak team scored the third goal in style.
2. The man was released without condition.
3. Impulsively, he left the place without telling anybody.
4. When you receive the money, please come to my house as soon as possible.
5. He was promoted recently.
6. The bridge will be closed till the end of this week.
7. Fire-arms have been found in the cave.
8. Spectators stood around the field to watch the game.
9. Ten houses which were put up illegally were pulled down.
10. He worked till late at night.

Check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Pasukan Perak menjaringkan gol yang ketiga dengan penuh bergaya.*
2. *Orang itu dilepaskan tanpa syarat.*
3. *Tanpa memberitahu siapa-siapa, dia meninggalkan tempat itu dengan tergesa-gesa.*
4. *Apabila awak terima wang itu, sila datang ke rumah saya dengan seberapa segera.*
5. *Dia dinaikkan pangkat baru-baru ini.*
6. *Jambatan itu akan ditutup hingga akhir minggu ini.*
7. *Senjata api telah dijumpai di dalam gua itu.*
8. *Penonton-penonton berdiri di keliling padang kerana hendak menyaksikan permainan tersebut.*
9. *Sepuluh buah rumah yang didirikan secara haram telah dirobohkan.*
10. *Dia bekerja hingga larut malam.*



## LESSON 45

### MORE DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES

One more way of forming Adjectives is by affixing the prefix *ke* and suffix *kan* to certain Nouns and some “colour” or “taste” words. For the “colour” and “taste” words, it is often reduplicated. Examples:

<i>keemasan</i>	golden
<i>kedaerahan, kenegerian</i>	provincial
<i>kebudak-budakan</i>	childish
<i>kemerah-merahan</i>	reddish
<i>keputih-putihan</i>	whitish
<i>kehijau-hijauan</i>	greenish
<i>kekuning-kuningan</i>	yellowish
<i>kebiru-biruan</i>	bluish
<i>kehitam-hitaman</i>	blackish
<i>kepahit-pahitan</i>	bitterish
<i>kemasam-masaman</i>	sourish
<i>kemanis-manisan</i>	sweetish

Examples in sentences:

*Sekarang awak ada peluang **keemasan** untuk melanjutkan pelajaran.*

Now you have a **golden** opportunity to further your studies.

*Apabila buah itu masak, warnanya kemerah-merahan.*  
When the fruit is ripe, it is **reddish** in colour.

*Umurnya sudah lebih 20 tahun tetapi kelakuannya masih kebudak-budakan.*

His age is more than 20 years but his behaviour is still **childish**.

*Air laut itu biru kehijau-hijauan.*

The sea-water is **greenish blue**.

*Rambut kawan saya perang kemerah-merahan.*

My friend's hair is **reddish brown**.

*Air nira itu manis kemasam-masaman.*

The palm juice is **sourish sweet**.

*Katanya ubat itu kepahit-pahitan.*

He said that the medicine is **bitterish**.

### Adjectives with the word *yang*

A few Derivative Adjectives, when used attributively, should be preceded by the word *yang*. Examples:

Used attributively	Used predicatively
<p><i>Kejayaan yang mengagumkan telah memberi harapan baik untuk masa depannya.</i> His astonishing success gives hope to his future.</p>	<p><i>Kejayaan yang telah dicapainya mengagumkan.</i> The success he has achieved is astonishing.</p>
<p><i>Nasihat-nasihat yang menggalakkan dihargai oleh pelajar-pelajar itu.</i> Encouraging advice is appreciated by the students.</p>	<p><i>Kerjasama yang telah diberi setakat ini sangat menggalakkan.</i> The cooperation given is very encouraging.</p>
<p><i>Berita yang mendukacitakan itu jangan disampaikan kepadanya.</i> Do not convey the sad news to him.</p>	<p><i>Perbuatannya itu sangat mendukacitakan.</i> His action is most regretted.</p>

## Adjectives formed from English words

A good number of English Adjectives have been absorbed into Bahasa Melayu. They are slightly modified to conform to the approved spelling system. Examples:

<b>Bahasa Melayu</b>	<b>English</b>
<i>demokratik</i>	democratic
<i>realistik</i>	realistic
<i>fanatik</i>	fanatic
<i>dramatik</i>	dramatic
<i>sistematik</i>	systematic
<i>automatik</i>	automatic
<i>diplomatik</i>	diplomatic

Examples in sentences:

*Pengajaran **sistematik** hendaklah selalu diamalkan.*

**Systematic** teaching should be carried out always.

*Sebagai sebuah negara **demokratik**, perniagaan bebas adalah digalakkan.*

As a **democratic** country, free trade is encouraged.

*Sebuah loceng **automatik** telah dipasang di kilang itu.*

An **automatik** bell has been installed at the factory.

## Adjectives before Nouns

There are a few Adjectives which are placed before Nouns. See examples below:

<i>bakal pengarah</i>	future director
<i>bekas guru</i>	former teacher
<i>perdana menteri</i>	prime minister
<i>ketua pengarang</i>	editor-in-chief

Examples in sentences:

*En. Lim ialah **bakal** pengarah syarikat kita.*

En. Lim is the **future** director of our company.

***Perdana** Menteri sesebuah negara adalah seperti seorang nakhoda kepada sebuah kapal.*

The **Prime** Minister of a country is like the captain to a ship.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*wawasan*, vision  
*objektif*, objective  
*rakyat*, citizens  
*halangan*, obstacle  
*adat*, customs  
*kebudayaan*, culture

*masyarakat*, community  
*masalah*, problem  
*tamadun*, civilisation  
*cabaran*, challenge  
*kesetiaan*, loyalty

### Verbs

*dicapai*, to be achieved  
*mewujudkan*, to create  
*mengamalkan*, to practise

*bersaing*, to compete  
*menyumbang*, to contribute  
*membangun*, to develop

### Miscellaneous

*bebas*, free  
*kekeluargaan*, family

*masa depan*, future

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Wawasan 2020*

*Wawasan 2020 bertujuan mewujudkan negara bermatlamat iaitu Malaysia akan menjadi negara maju dengan caranya tersendiri.*

*Objektif ini hanya boleh dicapai jika rakyat Malaysia dapat menghadapi dan mengatasi pelbagai halangan yang dianggap sebagai cabaran seperti:*

*Mewujudkan dan membangunkan masyarakat demokratik yang matang. Mengamalkan satu bentuk persefahaman yang matang, demokrasi Malaysia berasaskan masyarakat yang boleh menjadi contoh kepada negara membangun yang lain.*

*Mewujudkan masyarakat liberal dan bertolak ansur. Rakyat berbagai kaum bebas mengamalkan adat, kebudayaan dan kepercayaan agama masing-masing dan pada masa yang sama, meletakkan kesetiaan mereka kepada satu negara.*

*Mewujudkan masyarakat saintifik dan progresif. Mempunyai daya perubahan tinggi dan memandang ke depan, yang bukan sahaja menjadi pengguna teknologi tetapi juga menyumbang kepada tamadun saintifik dan teknologi masa depan.*

*Mewujudkan masyarakat penyayang dan budaya menyayangi. Iaitu sistem sosial yang mengutamakan masyarakat dari diri sendiri dan kebajikan insan tidak berkisar kepada negara atau individu tetapi di sekeliling sistem kekeluargaan yang kukuh.*

*Mewujudkan masyarakat makmur yang mempunyai ekonomi bersaing, dinamik, giat dan kental.*

*Cabaran-cabaran ini harus dihadapi bagi membolehkan Malaysia mencapai taraf negara maju.*

## **Exercise**

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after that:

1. His provincial sentiment is very strong.
2. The flower is yellowish white in colour.
3. En. Roslan has been appointed as editor-in-chief.

4. The sky on the western horizon turned reddish yellow.
5. Realistic steps should be taken early.
6. The medicine is a bit bitterish.
7. He is a former engineer with Tenaga Nasional Berhad.
8. The golden era of that country is over.
9. These preserved fruits taste sweet.
10. Diplomatic ties have been severed.

Check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Sentimen kedaerahan (kenegerian) nya sangat kuat.*
2. *Bunga itu putih kekuning-kuningan warnanya.*
3. *En. Roslan telah dilantik menjadi ketua pengarang.*
4. *Langit di ufuk barat menjadi kuning kemerah-merahan.*
5. *Langkah-langkah yang realistik patut diambil segera.*
6. *Ubat itu kepahit-pahitan sedikit.*
7. *Dia ialah bekas jurutera Tenaga Nasional Berhad.*
8. *Zaman keemasan negara itu telah tamat.*
9. *Buah-buahan jeruk itu manis rasanya.*
10. *Hubungan diplomatik telah terputus.*

## LESSON 46

### THE PREFIX *se*

The prefix *se* has a number of functions. It can be attached to Nouns, Adjectives and Verbs.

When it is attached to Nouns:

1. it expresses the meaning of one. Examples:

<i>seorang</i>	one person
<i>sehari</i>	one day
<i>seringgit</i>	one ringgit
<i>sepertiga</i>	one third

2. it expresses the meaning of “at the same”, “of the same”, or “in the same”. Examples:

<i>semeja</i>	at the same table
<i>sebaya</i>	of the same age
<i>sepejabat</i>	in the same office
<i>sekampung</i>	in the same village

3. it expresses the meaning of “whole” or “all over”. Examples:

<i>seluruh negara</i>	whole country
<i>segenap lapangan</i>	every field

*sepanjang jalan*  
*sekitar kawasan*

all along the road  
all round the area

4. it expresses the meaning of “during”. Examples:

*sewaktu itu*

during that time

*semasa perang*

during the war

*seketika itu*

during that moment

When attached to Adjectives:

1. it expresses the meaning of “as ... as”. Examples:

*sepandai dia*

as clever as he

*sejauh itu*

as far as that

*setinggi pokok*

as high as a tree

2. it expresses the meaning of “with”. Examples:

*sebenarnya*

with truthfulness; actually

*sesungguhnya*

with truth

*sepatutnya*

with fairness

*sewajarnya*

rightly

3. it expresses the meaning of “however”, with the Adjectives reduplicated . Examples:

*sepandai-pandai*

however clever

*sekaya-kaya*

however rich

*sebesar-besar*

however big

*semurah-murah*

however cheap

4. it expressed the meaning of “as ... as possible” when the suffix *nya* is further added. Examples:

*berlari sepantas-pantasnya*

to run as fast as possible.

*makan sebanyak-banyaknya*

to eat as much as possible

*bekerja sekeras-kerasnya*

to work as hard as possible



When attached to Verbs (only a few Verbs take this prefix), it expresses the meaning of “as soon as”. The suffix *nya* is often attached. Examples:

<i>setibanya di Ipoh</i>	as soon as he arrived in Ipoh
<i>sekembalinya dari Mekah</i>	as soon as he returned from Mecca

The following words do not indicate specific functions:

<i>seseorang</i>	someone
<i>sesuatu</i>	something
<i>sekiranya</i>	if by any chance
<i>sememangnya</i>	naturally; by nature
<i>sebarang</i>	any
<i>selain daripada itu</i>	beside that
<i>sehendak hatinya</i>	in accordance with his wish

Examples in sentences:

*Gajinya sehari RM 9.50.*  
His wage **per day** is RM 9.50.

*Asmah dan Zainah bekerja sepejabat dan tinggal serumah.*  
Asmah dan Zainab work in the same office and live in the **same house**.

*Sekitar kawasan itu telah dibersihkan.*  
**All round** the area has been cleaned.

*Bangunan itu setinggi pokok kelapa.*  
That building is **as high as** a coconut tree.

*Sepandai-pandai tupai melompat, kadang-kadang jatuh juga ke tanah.*

**However well** the squirrel jumps (from tree to tree), he sometimes falls to the ground. (A Malay proverb).

*Dia berlari **sepantas-pantasnya** tetapi dapat ditangkap oleh polis.*

He ran **as fast as** he could but he was caught by the police.

***Setibanya** di Ipoh, dia terus pergi ke Pejabat Pendidikan. As soon as he arrived in Ipoh, he went straight to the Education Office.*

***Seseorang** yang hendak menaiki keretapi dikehendaki membeli tiket terlebih dahulu.*

**Anyone** who wants to board the train (i.e. travel by train) is required to buy a ticket first.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*destinasi*, destination

*nadi*, pulse

*perhubungan*, communication

*infrastruktur*, infrastructure

*sistem*, system

*rangkaian*, chain, link

*peranan*, role

*kemudahan*, facility

*pelancong*, tourist

*pelancongan*, tourism

*sektor*, sector

*lebuhraya*, highway,

expressway

*utara*, north

*selatan*, south

*venue*, venue

### Verbs

*memajukan*, to progress

*melawat*, to visit

*mengatasi*, to overcome

*memainkan*, to play

*berhasrat*, wish

*turut*, follow

### Adjectives

*sempurna*, perfect, ideal

*utama*, main

*penting*, important

*terbaik*, the best

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Industri Pelancongan di Malaysia*

*Perhubungan merupakan nadi utama untuk memajukan sektor pelancongan. Setiap pelancong yang datang ke negara itu tentu berhasrat untuk melawat ke seluruh pelosok rantau negara.*

*Pergerakan para pelancong sudah pasti akan tergendala sekiranya tiada kemudahan infrastruktur yang sempurna. Dalam mengatasi masalah tersebut, kini rangkaian Lebuh Raya Utara Selatan sepanjang 600 kilometer telah menjadi alternatif terbaik.*

*Selain itu, perhubungan udara turut memainkan peranan penting untuk menjadi penggenap kepada destinasi pelancong ke negara ini. Untuk itu, kini KLIA telah menjadi jawapan sebenarnya. Sesungguhnya, kita turut yakin dengan sistem perhubungan yang begini sempurna, Malaysia pasti akan menjadi venue utama tumpuan pelancong di rantau sebelah sini.*

### **Exercise**

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after the exercise:

1. One-third of the students in the class are girls.
2. We ate at the same table.
3. The magazine is now distributed to the whole country.
4. During the war, I worked as a teacher.
5. Can you throw the javelin as far as that?
6. In all truth, that is the best novel of our time (era).
7. He worked as hard as he possibly could to pass his examination.
8. As soon as he returned from London, he opened a tailor shop.

9. If you want something, please let me know by writing (a letter).
10. He is by nature quiet but good-hearted (kind).

Check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Sepertiga daripada pelajar-pelajar dalam kelas itu perempuan.*
2. *Kami makan semeja.*
3. *Majalah itu sekarang diedarkan ke seluruh negara.*
4. *Semasa perang, saya bekerja sebagai guru.*
5. *Bolehkah awak melempar lembing sejauh itu?*
6. *Sebenarnya itulah novel yang paling baik di zaman kita.*
7. *Dia berusaha seberapa keras untuk lulus peperiksaan.*
8. *Sekembalinya dari London, dia membuka sebuah kedai jahit.*
9. *Jika awak hendak sesuatu, sila beritahu saya dengan menulis surat.*
10. *Dia sememangnya pendiam, tetapi hatinya baik.*

### AFFIXES

Up to now you have learnt nearly all the important prefixes and suffixes. Before we come to the end of the course, let's learn a few more.

#### Suffix *lah*

One of the functions of the suffix *lah* is to emphasise the meaning of the words to which it is attached, whether it is a Noun, Verb, Adjective or Adverb. Examples:

*Saya fikir durianlah buah yang sedap sekali.*  
I think the durian is the most delicious fruit.

*Kalau awak hendak, ambillah!*  
If you want, take it!

*Cantiklah poster itu.*  
The poster is beautiful.

*Perlahan-lahanlah sikit!*  
Move slowly please!

The suffix *lah* is also used to balance the sentence, that is to make the sentence more readable. Examples:

*Beberapa tahun kemudian, ramailah orang tinggal di situ.*

Some years later, many people lived there.

*Dengan membaca dan bertutur tiap-tiap hari, maka dia pun pandailah berbahasa Melayu.*

By reading and speaking every day, he became conversant in the Malay language.

*Datanglah bila-bila lapang.*

Do come whenever you are free.

### **Suffix *tah***

This suffix is very seldom used. It indicates a “half-question”.  
Examples:

*Apatah daya kita orang miskin?*

What can we do as we are poor?

*Manatah keberanianmu?*

Where is your courage?

### **Suffix *nya***

This suffix has at least three functions: Examples:

1. It is used as a Personal Pronoun in the third person. Examples:

*Beri wang ini kepadanya.*

Give this money to him.

*Ahmad menyimpan wangnya di dalam tabung.*

Ahmad keeps his money in a money-box.

*Katanya dia akan datang.*

He said that he would come.

**Note:** As *nya* is merely an affix, it cannot be used as a subject.

When attached to an Adjective or an Adverb, it lays emphasis on that word. Examples:

*Amboi, besarnya ular!*  
Oh, how big the snake is!

*Lebatnya hujan!*  
How heavy the rain is!

*Pantasnya budak itu berlari!*  
How fast the boy runs!

When attached to certain Nouns, it turns the Nouns into Possessive or an Adverb. Examples:

<i>khabarnya</i>	its news or the news is
<i>nampaknya</i>	its look or the look is
<i>akhirnya</i>	its end, or finally
<i>mulanya</i>	its beginning or at first
<i>asalnya</i>	its origin, or originally
<i>malangnya</i>	its misfortune or unfortunately

Examples in sentences:

*Khabarnya kapal angkasa itu telah mendarat di bulan.*  
According to the news, the spaceship has landed on the moon.

*Hari nak hujan nampaknya.*  
It looks like it's going to rain.

*Malangnya, dia tidak dapat menyertai rombongan ke Pulau Pangkor itu.*

Unfortunately, he was not able to join the party to Pulau Pangkor.

### **Prefix juru**

This prefix *juru* (which means skilled workman) is attached to certain words to form Nouns which refer to experts in a certain field.

<i>jurubina</i>	architect
<i>jurujual</i>	salesman
<i>jurukamera</i>	cameraman
<i>juruselam</i>	diver
<i>jurusolek</i>	beautician
<i>juruteknik</i>	technician
<i>juritrengkas</i>	stenographer
<i>juruhebah</i>	commentator; announcer
<i>jurutaip</i>	typist
<i>juruterbang</i>	pilot
<i>jururawat</i>	nurse
<i>jurubahasa</i>	interpreter
<i>jurutera</i>	engineer
<i>jurulatih</i>	trainer
<i>juruukur</i>	surveyor
<i>jurumudi</i>	steersman

### **Prefix tata**

The prefix *tata* (meaning system or method) is attached to a few Nouns. Examples:

<i>tatanegara</i>	form of government
<i>tatabahasa</i>	grammar
<i>tatabuku</i>	book-keeping
<i>tatarakyat</i>	civics



*tatatertib*

discipline

### Suffix *wan* and *wati*

The suffix *wan* is affixed to a number of Nouns and Adjectives to form words which refer to persons. The suffix *wati* is for the feminine, but it is used with very few words. Examples:

<i>angkasawan</i>	astronaut
<i>relawan</i>	volunteer
<i>wartawan</i>	journalist
<i>sasterawan</i>	literary man
<i>hartawan</i>	wealthy man
<i>dermawan</i>	philanthropist
<i>jutawan</i>	millionaire
<i>pragawati</i>	model
<i>relawati</i>	woman volunteer
<i>seniwati</i>	actress

## Word to Remember

### Nouns

<i>motosikal</i> , motorcycle	<i>perlumbaan</i> , race
<i>perbuatan</i> , act	<i>undang-undang</i> , law
<i>gangguan</i> , disturbance	<i>pesalah</i> , wrong-doer
<i>penjara</i> , jail	<i>kematian</i> , death
<i>trafik</i> , traffic	<i>remaja</i> , youth
<i>denda</i> , penalty	<i>aktiviti</i> , activity
<i>kemalangan</i> , accident	<i>kerosakan</i> , destruction
<i>kecenderungan</i> , interest	<i>pergerakan</i> , movement
<i>ketenteraman</i> , peacefulness	

### Verbs

<i>dikategorikan</i> , classified	<i>membawa</i> , to result in
<i>mengancam</i> , to threaten	<i>dikenakan</i> , to sentence
<i>bertentangan</i> , to go against	<i>menyedari</i> , to be aware

## Adjectives

*haram*, illegal

*amat*, very

*padah*, bad omen

*awam*, public

*buruk*, undesirable, bad

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Perlumbaan Haram Motosikal*

*Perlumbaan haram motosikal ialah satu kesalahan undang-undang yang dikategorikan sebagaimana satu perbuatan yang boleh membawa gangguan di jalan raya dan mengancam ketenteraman awam.*

*Sebarang perlakuan salah laku yang seumpamanya, pesalah boleh dikenakan tindakan iaitu denda RM600 atau enam bulan penjara atau kedua-duanya sekali.*

*Dengan yang demikian, perbuatan ini sebenarnya amat bertentangan dengan undang-undang negara dan ia boleh membawa implikasi buruk seperti kemalangan, kematian, kerosakan dan berbagai-bagai gangguan termasuk kelancaran pergerakan trafik di jalan raya.*

*Oleh itu, kita hendaklah menyedari bahawa kecenderungan remaja kini dalam aktiviti haram seumpama ini akan membawa musibah yang buruk padahnya.*

## Exercise

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after that:

1. He washes his car every day.
2. Jamil said that he reached the top of the hill in 20 minutes.
3. What a hot day, today!

4. Finally, they decided to go downstream in a raft.
5. She seems tired.
6. Neil Armstrong, the American spaceman, was the first man (manusia) to set foot on the moon.
7. Millionaires may live in large and beautiful bungalows, but they may still lack something.
8. His job as a journalist is very challenging.
9. "If your work is finished, do whatever you like," said mother.
10. Its leaves are useful and its fruits are delicious.

Check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Dia membasuh keretanya tiap-tiap hari.*
2. *Kata Jamil (Jamil berkata) dia sampai di kemuncak bukit itu dalam 20 minit.*
3. *Panasnya hari ini!*
4. *Akhirnya mereka mengambil keputusan menghilir dengan rakit.*
5. *Nampaknya dia letih.*
6. *Neil Armstrong, angkasawan Amerika itu, ialah manusia pertama menjejakkan kaki di bulan.*
7. *Jutawan-jutawan mungkin tinggal di banglo-banglo besar dan (lagi) cantik, tetapi mereka mungkin masih kekurangan sesuatu.*
8. *Tugasnya sebagai wartawan adalah mencabar.*
9. *"Jika kerja kau dah habis, buatlah apa-apa kau suka," kata emaknya.*
10. *Daunnya berguna dan buahnya sedap.*

### REDUPLICATION

A word may be reduplicated either completely or partially. In complete reduplication, the whole word or the “stem” is repeated. In partial reduplication, only a syllable or a few letters are repeated.

Reduplication may occur with Nouns, Verbs or Adjectives. You have learnt in Lesson 1 that at times a Noun is reduplicated to indicate plurality.

An Adjective is reduplicated to indicate emphasis or intensity or to turn it into an Adverb. Examples:

*Semua anak kucing itu **hitam-hitam** belaka.* (Emphasis)  
All the kittens are **black**.

*Kebanyakan bangunan di bandar itu **tinggi-tinggi**.* (Emphasis)  
Many of the buildings in that city are **tall**.

*Hiris timun itu **nipis-nipis**.* (Adverb)  
Slice the cucumber into **thin pieces**.

A Verb is reduplicated to indicate repetition or continuity.

**Note:** Only the “stems” are repeated.

Examples:

*Mari kita pergi **minum-minum** di restoran itu.*

Let's go and **have a drink** at that restaurant.

*Apabila saya soal dia, dia **menggaru-garu** kepalanya.*

When I questioned him, he **scratched** his head.

*Roda itu **dipusing-pusingnya**.*

He **turned** the wheel (several times).

*Mereka **berjalan-jalan** di tepi laut itu.*

They **strolled** along the beach.

Below are examples of partial reduplications.

## Nouns

<i>batu-batan</i>	rocks
<i>bukit-bukau</i>	hills
<i>calar-balar</i>	scratches
<i>cirit-birit</i>	diarrhoea
<i>gerak-geri</i>	movements
<i>gotong-royong</i>	cooperation
<i>gunung-ganang</i>	mountains
<i>jongkang-jongkit</i>	see-saw
<i>kacau-bilau</i>	disturbance
<i>lauk-pauk</i>	all sorts of dishes
<i>mandi-manda</i>	all kinds of ablutions
<i>rumpit-rampai</i>	grasses
<i>sampah-sarap</i>	rubbish
<i>sayur-mayur</i>	vegetables
<i>serba-serbi</i>	various kinds
<i>suku-sakat</i>	tribe

<i>susur-galur</i>	genealogy
<i>tali-temali</i>	ropes of all kinds
<i>tanah-tanah</i>	all types of soil
<i>teka-teki</i>	riddle

## Adjectives

<i>bengkang-bengkak</i>	winding
<i>compang-camping</i>	torn and tattered
<i>gelap-gelita</i>	pitch black
<i>gilang-gemilang</i>	shining
<i>hiruk-pikuk</i>	noisy
<i>hitam-legam</i>	very black
<i>kelap-kelip</i>	chaotic
<i>kucar-kacir</i>	disorder
<i>porak-peranda</i>	chaotic
<i>remeh-temeh</i>	unimportant
<i>riuh-rendah</i>	very noisy
<i>selit-belit</i>	complicated
<i>tawar-hambar</i>	totally tasteless
<i>terang-benderang</i>	bright and clear
<i>warna-warni</i>	multicoloured

## Adverbs

<i>gopoh-gapah</i>	hastily
<i>lambat-laun</i>	sooner or later
<i>senang-lenang</i>	in comfort
<i>simpang-perenang</i>	in all directions
<i>lintang-pukang</i>	topsy-turvy

Examples in sentences:

*Melalui tingkap kapal terbang, saya dapat melihat **gunung-ganang** di banjaran Alps itu.*

Through the window of the aeroplane, I could see the **mountains** in the Alps.

*Apabila lampu-lampu itu dipadamkan, seluruh bandar menjadi gelap-gelita.*

When the lights were switched off, the whole city was in total **darkness**.

*Saya tahu lambat-laun dia akan berjaya.*

I knew that **sooner or later** he would succeed.

*Sekarang dia hidup senang-lenang bersama isteri dan tiga orang anaknya.*

Now he lives **comfortably** with his wife and three children.

*Apabila saya masuk ke dalam bilik itu, saya dapati segala kerusi meja di dalamnya lintang-pukang.*

When I entered the room, I found that all the chairs and tables in the room are **topsy-turvy**.

## Words to Remember

### Nouns

*air*, water

*sampah-sarap*, rubbish

*najis*, shit

*setinggalan*, squatter

*nyamuk*, mosquito

*cirit-birit*, diarrhoea

*kempen*, campaign

*penguatkuasaan*, enforcement

*penyelesaian*, solution

*kesan*, effect

*pencemaran*, pollution

*hidupan*, life

*lalat*, flies

*deman denggi*, dengue fever

*pengaruh*, influence

*jiwa*, spirit

*individu*, individual

*agen-agen*, agents

### Verbs

*bertabur*, scattered

*ditimbuni*, to pile up

*mengalu-alukan*, to welcome

*memahami*, to understand

*menuntut*, to demand

*ditumpahi*, to spill

*menjalankan*, to carry out

*berterusan*, to continue

*melekat*, to stick

*memastikan*, to ensure

### Miscellaneous

*kini*, now

*akuatik*, aquatic

*negatif*, negative

*misalnya*, for example

*kesimpulannya*, in short

*seterusnya*, following it

## Reading Passage for Comprehension

### *Masalah Sampah-Sarap*

*Udara yang kotor, sampah-sarap bertabur, dan air pula bermacam-pur lodak telah menuntut kepada suatu penyelesaian yang menyeluruh.*

*Kini, pelbagai kesan negatif telah ditimbulkan oleh agen-agen penyebab pencemaran misalnya sungai-sungai yang ditimbuni sampah dan najis dan laut yang ditumpahi minyak telah menyebabkan berlaku pencemaran air dan memusnahkan hidupan akuatik.*

*Kawasan sekitar rumah terutama di kawasan setinggan dan rumah-rumah pangsa yang dipenuhi sampah-sarap telah mengalu-alukan kedatangan lalat dan nyamuk yang boleh membawa berjenis-jenis penyakit berbahaya kepada penduduk sekitar seperti penyakit cirit-birit, malaria dan deman denggi.*

*Langkah yang pertama dan juga paling utama ialah menggunakan pengaruh ibu bapa. Anak-anak kecil harus dipupuk mencintai kebersihan dan ditunjukkan cara-cara yang baik membuang sampah untuk diteladani.*

*Langkah yang seterusnya ialah menjalankan kempen kebersihan dan cintakan tempat-tempat awam.*

*Setelah itu, kempen yang dijalankan hendaklah diikuti dengan penguatkuasaan undang-undang dalam memastikan ia berterusan dan melekat dalam jiwa setiap individu.*



*Kesimpulannya, dengan langkah-langkah yang berterusan dan bukannya bersifat musiman, nescaya masalah kekotoran dan sampah-sarap akan dapat diatasi dan negara kita sudah pasti akan bersih.*

### **Exercise**

Translate the following sentences into Bahasa Melayu. After you have written out all the sentences, check with the correct translation after that:

1. All the durians are large.
2. Please speak clearly.
3. They went there to have a look at the animals in the cage.
4. Rubbish in the town is collected every morning.
5. His movements are watched by the police.
6. The soup is totally tasteless because the cook forgot to add salt.
7. He worked hard when he was young; now he lives in comfort.
8. They went hunting in the hills across the river.
9. When the lights (lamps) are put on, the disco was bright and clear.
10. The expensive shirts are kept in special boxes.

Check your sentences with the correct translation below:

1. *Semua buah durian itu besar-besar.*
2. *Sila cakap terang-terang.*
3. *Mereka pergi ke situ untuk melihat-lihat binatang di dalam kandang itu.*
4. *Sampah-sarap di dalam bandar itu dipungut tiap-tiap pagi.*
5. *Gerak-gerinya diperhatikan oleh polis.*

6. *Sup itu tawar-hambar kerana tukang masak terlupa membubuh garam.*
7. *Dia bekerja keras semasa muda; sekarang dia hidup senang-lenang.*
8. *Mereka pergi berburu di bukit-bukau di seberang sungai itu.*
9. *Apabila lampu-lampu terpasang (dipasang), disko itu menjadi terang-benderang.*
10. *Kemeja yang mahal-mahal disimpan dalam kotak-kotak istimewa.*

## Appendix A

### LIST OF CLASS 1 VERBS

<i>ada</i> , to be present	<i>hamil</i> , to conceive
<i>azan, bang</i> , to call to prayer	<i> hanyut</i> , to drift; to float
<i>balik</i> , to return	<i>hidup</i> , to be alive
<i>bangun</i> , to get up	<i>hilang</i> , to be missing; to lose
<i>baring</i> , to lie down	<i>hinggap</i> , to alight
<i>batuk</i> , to cough	<i>ingat</i> , to remember
<i>berak</i> , to defecate	<i>ingkar</i> , to break a pledge
<i>boçor</i> , to leak	<i>jadi</i> , to become
<i>buat</i> , to do	<i>jatuh</i> , to fall
<i>bongkas</i> , to uproot	<i>kandas</i> , to fail; to run aground
<i>bunting</i> , to be pregnant	<i>keluar</i> , to go out
<i>cambah</i> , to germinate	<i>kembali</i> , to return
<i>campur</i> , to mix; to total up	<i>kembang</i> , to pen out (of flowers)
<i>campur tangan</i> , to take part; to interfere	<i>kencing</i> , to urinate
<i>dapat</i> , to get; to obtain	<i>kentut</i> , to fart
<i>datang</i> , to come	<i>ketawa</i> , to laugh
<i>diam</i> , to live; to keep quiet	<i>kuncup</i> , to close up (of flowers)
<i>duduk</i> , to sit	<i>lahir</i> , to be born
<i>fikir</i> , to think	<i>lari</i> , to run
<i>gelak</i> , to laugh	<i>lepas</i> , to set free
<i>gering</i> , to be sick (of royalty)	<i>lulus</i> , to pass
<i>getak, gugur</i> , to drop (prematurely)	<i>lupa</i> , to forget
	<i>luruh</i> , to fall
	<i>maju</i> , advance

<i>mandi</i> , to bathe	<i>santap</i> , to eat (of royalty)
<i>mangkat</i> , to die (of royalty)	<i>sedawa</i> , to belch
<i>mara</i> , to advance	<i>sekah</i> , to break (of branch of tree)
<i>mari</i> , to come	<i>sembahyang</i> , to pray
<i>masuk</i> , to enter	<i>senyum</i> , to smile
<i>mati</i> , to die	<i>singgah</i> , to stop on the way
<i>muak</i> , to feel boredom	<i>sudah</i> , to finish
<i>mula</i> , to begin, to start	<i>surut</i> , to ebb
<i>muncul</i> , to emerge	<i>sujud</i> , to prostrate in prayer
<i>mundur</i> , to go backwards	<i>tampil</i> , to come or to step forward
<i>muntah</i> , to vomit	<i>taubat</i> , to repent
<i>naik</i> , to rise; to go up	<i>tenggelam</i> , to sink
<i>nampak</i> , to see (to be visible)	<i>terbang</i> , to fly
<i>patah</i> , to break (of long objects)	<i>terbit</i> , come out
<i>pecah</i> , to break (into fragments)	<i>terjun</i> , to jump down; to dive
<i>percaya</i> , to believe	<i>tertawa</i> , to laugh
<i>pergi</i> , to go	<i>tiba</i> , to arrive
<i>pengsan</i> , to faint; to swoon	<i>tidur</i> , to sleep
<i>pitam</i> , to feel dizzy	<i>timbul</i> , to be afloat
<i>pulang</i> , to return	<i>tinggal</i> , to live; to remain
<i>putus</i> , to be severed	<i>tiris</i> , to leak
<i>rebah</i> , to fall (aslant)	<i>tumbang</i> , to fall through
<i>rukuk</i> , to bow the head in prayer	lengthwise
<i>sakit</i> , to be sick	<i>tumbuh</i> , to grow
<i>salam</i> , to turn the head to the right	<i>tumpah</i> , to spill
and left at the end of a prayer	<i>turun</i> , to retreat
<i>solat</i> , to pray	<i>wujud</i> , to exist
<i>sampai</i> , to arrive	<i>yakin</i> , to be certain

### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

Here is a short list of idiomatic expressions in Bahasa Melayu. This is considered sufficient for your present study. You will notice that all the expressions are made up of two words. Examples are given for every expression, and these should help you to comprehend their meanings and to use them later on in sentences of your own.

1. *anak angkat*, adopted child

*Oleh kerana En. Ahmad dan isterinya Pn. Aminah tidak mempunyai anak, mereka telah mengambil seorang anak saudara Pn. Aminah sebagai **anak angkat**.*

2. *anak buah* (a) one's descendants or of his relatives (b) the people under the charge of a headman or chief.

(a) *Dalam majlis kenduri itu, hampir semua **anak buah** En. Hamid hadir.*

(b) *Tok Penghulu telah berpakat dengan **anak buahnya** untuk mendirikan sebuah surau secara gotong-royong.*

3. *anak bulan*, the new moon

*Beberapa orang pegawai dari Majlis Agama telah berlepas ke Teluk Kemang untuk melihat **anak bulan** bagi menentukan bermulanya bulan puasa.*

4. *anak emas, an employer's favourite*  
*Dalam masa enam bulan sahaja Rani telah dinaikkan pangkat kerana dia bukan sahaja cekap bekerja tetapi adalah **anak emas** pengurus kilang itu.*
5. *air mati, boiled water*  
*Selepas ubat ini ditelan, minumlah sedikit **air mati**.*
6. *ajak-ajak ayam, insincere invitation*  
*Saya tidak datang ke majlis itu kerana pelawaannya itu **ajak-ajak ayam** sahaja; dia menjemput saya di tengah jalan!*
7. *batu api, instigator*  
*Dialah **batu api** dalam perkara itu; kalau tidak kerana dia perkara itu sudah pun selesai.*
8. *batu loncatan, a stepping stone*  
*Dia menerima jawatan itu sebagai **batu loncatan** sahaja; dari situ senanglah dia mendapat jawatan yang lebih baik.*
9. *berat mulut, quiet, reserved*  
*Si Hasan tu **berat mulut** orangnya; kalau tak ditegur dia tidak akan bercakap.*
10. *berat telinga, hard of hearing*  
*Kalau awak nak bercakap c'ngan dia terpaksa kuat-kuat sikit kerana dia tu **bera telinga**.*

11. *berbulan madu*, to spend a honeymoon  
*Perbuatan **berbulan madu** dengan pergi ke suatu tempat yang jauh selepas berkahwin adalah tiruan dari kebudayaan asing.*
12. *berlari-lari anak*, half-running; half walking  
*Kami nampak Fatimah **berlari-lari anak** ke baruh senja tadi, mungkin kerana mencari anaknya.*
13. *berpeluk tubuh*, to sit back  
*Kita tidak boleh **berpeluk tubuh** lagi; kita mesti mengambil bahagian dalam rancangan pembangunan negara.*
14. *bertikam lidah*, to engage in a heated argument.  
*Seorang ahli pembangkang **bertikam lidah** dengan seorang penyokong kerajaan dalam mesyuarat itu semalam.*
15. *besar hati*, delighted; to feel proud  
*Encik Rahman berasa **besar hati** kerana anak perempuannya Asmah telah lulus peperiksaan akhirnya di Universiti Malaya.*
16. *besar kepala*, proud  
*Semua orang tahu mandor itu **besar kepala**; seolah-olah dialah pengurus syarikat.*
17. *buah hati*, a loved one  
*Katanya dia bersedia berkorban apa saja demi kepentingan **buah hatinya**.*
18. *buah mulut*, topic of conversation

*Peristiwa anak perempuan Samad lari dari rumah telah menjadi **buah mulut** penduduk kampung itu.*

19. *buah tangan, something brought by a visitor as a gift for the host*  
*Apabila Rahmah menziarahi anak saudaranya di hospital, dia membawa beberapa biji buah epal dan anggur sebagai **buah tangan**.*
20. *buang air besar, to defecate*  
*Pada masa dahulu, penduduk yang tinggal di tepi sungai **buang air besar** di sungai.*
21. *buang air kecil, to urinate*  
*Gunakanlah air selepas **buang air kecil**.*
22. *buku lima, fist*  
*Orang muda itu telah menewaskan penyamun itu dengan **buku limanya** sahaja.*
23. *buta huruf, illiterate*  
*Satu daripada cara untuk membasmi **buta huruf** ialah dengan mengadakan kelas untuk orang-orang dewasa.*
24. *cari penyakit, to look for trouble*  
*Jangan **cari penyakit**, jangan dikacau sarang tebuan itu.*
25. *cahaya mata, a child who is much loved*  
*Selepas dua tahun mereka berkahwin, mereka telah mendapat seorang **cahaya mata**, dan mereka namakannya Murni, gabungan daripada nama bapanya Murad dan ibunya Rohani.*



26. *cepat tangan*, one who likes to steal  
*Orang yang **cepat tangan** hendaklah diawasi apabila dia memasuki sesebuah kedai atau supermarket.*
27. *cincin tanda*, engagement ring  
*Kita tahu dia telah bertunang kerana dia ada memakai **cincin tanda** di jari manisnya.*
28. *gelap mata*, to lose one's sense of thought  
*Apabila kerani itu melihat wang beribu-ribu ringgit di atas mejanya, maka dia pun **gelap mata** dimasukkannya setengah ke dalam sakunya!*
29. *geli hati*, tickled; amused  
*Penonton sekalian **geli hati** menyaksikan lawak jenaka yang dipersembahkan oleh Jamali Syadat dan rakannya itu.*
30. *gila bahasa*, eccentric  
*Dia itu **gila bahasa** janganlah dipedulikan sangat perbuatannya.*
31. *gila urat*, lustful; salacious  
*Orang yang **gila urat** sentiasa berpakaian cantik, bahkan kadang-kadang melebihi yang sepatutnya, dan memakai bau-bauan pula!*
32. *hancur hati*, broken-hearted  
*Dia telah **hancur hati** kerana pemuda yang berjanji hendak mengahwininya itu adalah seorang penipu besar.*
33. *hati kecil*, innermost heart

*Dia nampak sahaja riang, tetapi di **hati kecilnya** dia tidak puas hati dengan tindakan yang diambil terhadapnya.*

34. *hidung tinggi, snobbish*  
*Ramai orang tahu dia **hidung tinggi**, jika kita beri dia ucap selamat pun jarang-jarang dia menyahut.*
35. *jalan mati, cul-de-sac; dead end*  
*Jalan ini **jalan mati**. Di hujungnya ada gaung.*
36. *jantung hati, (same as buah hati)*
37. *jatuh cinta, to fall in love*  
*Apabila dilihatnya gadis itu dengan serta-merta dia **jatuh cinta**, lalu terus meminangnya.*
38. *jatuh hati (same as jatuh cinta)*
39. *kaki ayam, barefooted*  
*Dahulu ramai budak kampung datang ke sekolah dengan **berkaki ayam**.*
40. *kaki botol, drunkard*  
*Dia seorang **kaki botol** dan banyak masanya terbuang dengan kerja-kerja maksiat.*
41. *kaki judi, a gambler*  
*Banyak wangnya telah habis kerana dia seorang **kaki judi**.*
42. *kaki bangku, one who is not good at outdoor games*  
*Betul dia **kaki bangku** tetapi dia sangat maju dalam pelajaran.*

43. *kaki sembang*, one who is good at making conversation  
*Dia seorang **kaki sembang** dan boleh berbual berjam-jam lamanya.*
44. *kecil hati*, hurt (in the feeling)  
*Zainab berasa **kecil hati** kerana dia tidak dijemput hadir ke majlis itu.*
45. *keras hati*, obstinate; indisposition  
*Dia telah dinasihatkan jangan bergaduh lagi tetapi dia **keras hati**.*
46. *keras kepala*, stubborn  
*Oleh kerana dia **keras kepala**, orang tidak suka kepadanya.*
47. *keras sumbang*, an unsociable person  
*Hidupnya seperti **keras sumbang**, oleh itu orang tidak tahu hal kehidupannya.*
48. *kepala angin*, a moody person  
*Nyatalah dia itu **kepala angin**; semalam kelihatan peramah dan mesra, tetapi hari ini tidak mahu bercakap dan menjauhkan diri.*
49. *khabar angin*, rumour  
*Rupa-rupanya berita yang mengatakan harga getah akan naik itu hanyalah **khabar angin**.*
50. *kuku besi*, cruelty, iron fist  
*Rakyat telah memberontak terhadap raja yang menjalankan pemerintahan secara **kuku besi** itu.*
51. *kutu embun*, one who goes out till late at night

*Mereka adalah **kutu embun** di kampung ini—  
mereka melalak ke hulu ke hilir hingga jauh malam.*

52. *langit hijau*, a place which is far away  
*Isteri Yusuf akan ikutnya walaupun sampai ke **langit hijau**.*
53. *makan gaji*, to work for wages  
*Kebanyakan penduduk bandar mencari nafkah dengan **makan gaji**.*
54. *makan suap*, to accept bribe  
*Perbuatan **makan suap** adalah satu jenayah yang sangat buruk.*
55. *masuk campur*, to participate; to get involved  
*Jangan **masuk campur** hal orang lain, buatlah kerja kau sendiri.*
56. *mata kayu* (same as *buta huruf*)
57. *mata pencarian*, means of livelihood  
***Mata pencarian** mereka ialah menangkap ikan.*
58. *membabi buta*, to attack furiously without a proper plan  
*Dia menjalankan kerja itu dengan **membabi buta**, itulah sebabnya dia gagal.*
59. *membawa mulut*, to carry tales  
*Orang yang suka **membawa mulut** dibenci orang.*
60. *meninggal dunia*, to pass away  
*Bapanya **meninggal dunia** kira-kira dua tahun lalu.*

61. *merendahkan diri*, to lower oneself; to be humble  
*Orang yang merendahkan diri tidak akan hilang darjatnya.*
62. *naik angin*, to be angry  
*Jangan dekati dia, dia tengah naik angin.*
63. *naik haji*, to go on pilgrimage to Mecca  
*Saya bercadang hendak naik haji tahun hadapan.*
64. *panjang tangan*, like to steal (usually small articles)  
*Perhatikan budak itu— dia tu panjang tangan.*
65. *pasang telinga*, to listen attentively  
*Kita terpaksa pasang telinga kerana syarahannya sangat bernas.*
66. *pasar gelap*, black market  
*Barang ini boleh didapati di pasar gelap, tetapi harganya tersangat mahal.*
67. *peti mati*, money-box which is difficult to open  
*Orang tua-tua dahulu menyimpan wang mereka dalam peti mati; peti itu dibuka hanya apabila wang sangat-sangat diperlukan.*
68. *putih mata*, disappointed  
*Putih matanya kerana cincin di jarinya terjatuh ke dalam air sedang dia mandi di sungai itu.*
69. *ringan tulang*, like to do work; active  
*Halimah ringan tulang, bila ada apa-apa kerja dia akan menolong.*

70. *sagu hati*, compensation  
*Orang yang kena langgar itu diberi **sagu hati** sebanyak RM500.*
71. *sakit hati*, resentful; angry  
*Dia **sakit hati** melihat orang berjaya, tetapi dia sendiri tidak mahu berusaha.*
72. *telinga nipis*, sensitive to criticism  
*Jika awak **telinga nipis** janganlah masuk campur dalam perdebatan itu.*
73. *tidur ayam*, half asleep  
*Jangan bercakap di sini, takut didengarnya kerana dia itu **tidur ayam** sahaja.*
74. *tumbuk rusuk*, to give a bribe  
*Kalau awak **tumbuk rusuknya** ada kemungkinan kerja itu dapat dibereskannya hari ini.*

## VOCABULARY

- A**  
abate, *reda*  
able, *mampu*  
about, *kira-kira; mengenai; tentang; darihal*  
abuse, *maki, memaki*  
achieve, *capai; mencapai*  
active, *cergas*  
actor, *seniman*  
actress, *seniwati*  
A.D., *Tahun Masihi*  
addition, *tambahan*  
administer (to), *tadbir*  
adult, *dewasa*  
adult person, *orang dewasa*  
advice, *nasihat*  
aeroplane, *kapal terbang*  
affairs, *hal-ehwal*  
afraid of (to be), *takut*  
after, *lepas; selepas; setelah*  
afternoon prayer, *Zuhur*  
again, *sekali lagi; pula*  
age, *umur; zaman*  
agriculture, *pertanian*  
air, *udara*  
alive (to be), *hidup*  
all, *semua*  
all over, *seluruh*  
all sorts, *berbagai-bagai*  
alone, *seorang diri*  
along the road, *sepanjang jalan*  
alright, *baiklah*  
also, *pun; juga*  
always, *sentiasa; selalu*  
ambition, *cita-cita*  
among, *di antara*  
ancient, *purba; purbakala*  
ancient time, *zaman silam*  
and, *dan; dengan*  
angry with (to be), *marah*  
anniversary, *ulangtahun*  
answer, *jawab; menjawab*  
ant, *semut*  
anxious (to be), *bimbang*  
appoint (to), *lantik*  
arrange (to), *susun; menyusun; mengatur*  
arrest (to), *tangkap, menangkap;*

arrive (to), *sampai*  
 ask (to), *tanya*  
 assemble (to), *kumpul, berkumpul*  
 assess (to), *nilai, menilai*  
 as usual, *seperti biasa*  
 archipelago, *kepulauan*  
 are, *ialah; adalah*  
 area, *kawasan*  
 around, *di keliling*  
 as, *sebagai*  
 as if, *seolah-olah*  
 assistance, *bantuan*  
 at, *di*  
 at (time), *pada*  
 at (where), *di mana*  
 at (present), *sekarang*  
 attacker, *penyerang*  
 attend school (to), *bersekolah*  
 attention, *perhatian*  
 avoid (to), *elak, mengelakkan*  
 axe, *kapak*

## B

baby, *bayi*  
 back (at the), *di belakang; di balik*  
 bad, *jahat; busuk*  
 bag, *beg*  
 ball, *bola*  
 banana, *pisang*  
 bandit, *penjahat*  
 basket, *bakul*  
 bathe (to), *mandi*  
 bathroom, *bilik mandi*  
 beach, *pantai*

beautiful, *cantik*  
 beautify oneself (to), *hias, berhias*  
 because, *sebab; oleh kerana; kerana*  
 become (to), *jadi*  
 bedstead, *katil*  
 bee, *lebah*  
 before, *hari dahulu; sebelum; tempoh hari*  
 begin (to), *mula, bermula*  
 beginning, *awal*  
 behind, *di balik; di belakang*  
 bell, *loceng*  
 below, *di bawah*  
 belt, *tali pinggang*  
 bench, *bangku*  
 beside, *di sebelah*  
 bestow (to), *anugerah*  
 bicycle, *basikal*  
 binoculars, *teropong*  
 bird, *burung*  
 biscuit, *biskut*  
 bite (to), *gigit, menggigit*  
 bit of paper, *keping kertas*  
 bitter, *pahit; pahit getir*  
 bitterness, *pahitnya; kepahitan*  
 blanket, *selimut*  
 blind, *buta*  
 board, *lembaga*  
 boat, *perahu*  
 body, *badan*  
 boil (to), *rebus*  
 bomb (to), *bom, mengebom*  
 bone, *tulang*  
 book, *buku*



book-case, *almari buku*  
 booming sound (with),  
     *berdentum-dentam*  
 borrow (to), *pinjam, meminjam*  
 box, *kotak; peti*  
 boy, *budak lelaki*  
 brave, *berani*  
 bridge, *jambatan*  
 bring (to), *bawa, membawa*  
 bring up (to), *asuh; didik,*  
     *mendidik*  
 broadcast (to), *siar, menyiarkan*  
 brush, *berus*  
 brush (to), *berus, memberus*  
 budgraft (to), *tut. mengetut*  
 buffalo droppings, *tahi kerbau*  
 build, *bina, membina*  
 building, *bangunan*  
 bus, *bas*  
 busy, *sibuk*  
 but, *tetapi*  
 butcher, *penjual daging*  
 butter, *mentega*  
 buy (to), *beli, membeli*  
 by so doing, *dengan demikian*

## C

cage, *kandang*  
 call (to), *panggil; menamakan*  
 calm, *tenang*  
 camera, *kamera*  
 can, *boleh*  
 canal, *terusan*  
 cane (to), *rotan, merotan*  
 canteen, *kantin*  
 capital, *ibukota*

card, *kad*  
 careful, *cermat*  
 careful, *cermat-cermat*  
 carry out (to), *jalankan*  
 casting-net, *jala*  
 cast net (to), *jala, menjala*  
 cat, *kucing*  
 catch (to), *tangkap, menangkap*  
 cause, *sebab*  
 cave, *gua*  
 caw (to), *mengerak*  
 ceiling, *siling*  
 celebrate (to), *merayakan;*  
     *sambut, menyambut*  
 celebration, *perayaan*  
 centre, *pusat*  
 cents, *sen*  
 century, *kurun; abad*  
 ceremony, *upacara*  
 certainly, *tentulah*  
 certify (to), *sah, mengesahkan*  
 chair, *kerusi*  
 chairman, *pengerusi*  
 chalk, *kapur*  
 chase (to), *kejar, mengejar*  
 cheap, *murah*  
 chemistry, *kimia*  
 chicken, *anak ayam*  
 chief clerk, *ketua kerani*  
 child, *budak; anak*  
 children (general), *kanak-kanak*  
 chocolate, *coklat*  
 choose (to), *pilih, memilih*  
 chop (to), *parang, memarang*  
 chopper, *parang*  
 cicada, *riang-riang*

cigarette, <i>rokok</i>	comfort (in), <i>senang-lenang</i>
citizen, <i>warganegara</i>	communicate (to), <i>berhubung</i>
city, <i>bandar; bandaraya</i>	community, <i>kaum</i>
clan, <i>puak</i>	company, <i>syarikat</i>
clash with each other (to), <i>tempur, bertempur</i>	concerning, <i>mengenai</i>
class, <i>lapisan; kelas</i>	conference, <i>persidangan</i>
clean, <i>bersih</i>	confirm (to), <i>sah, mengesahkan</i>
clear, <i>jelas</i>	conquer (to), <i>tawan, menawan</i>
clerk, <i>kerani</i>	conscious, <i>sedar</i>
clever, <i>pandai</i>	consider (to), <i>anggap</i>
climax, <i>kemuncak</i>	consist of (to), <i>mengandungi</i>
climb (to), <i>panjat, memanjat;</i> <i>daki, mendaki</i>	construct (to), <i>membina</i>
clock, <i>jam</i>	continent, <i>benua</i>
close, <i>rapat</i>	control (to) <i>kawal, mengawal</i>
close (to), <i>tutup, menutup</i>	convince (to), <i>yakin,</i> <i>menyakinkan</i>
cloth, <i>kain</i>	cook, <i>tukang masak</i>
clothes, <i>pakaian</i>	cooked rice, <i>nasi</i>
cloud, <i>awan</i>	cooking-pot, <i>periuk</i>
club, <i>kelab</i>	co-operate (to), <i>kerjasama,</i> <i>bekerjasama</i>
coast, <i>pantai</i>	cough, <i>batuk</i>
coat, <i>baju</i>	cough mixture, <i>ubat batuk</i>
coat with sugar (to), <i>sira</i>	count, <i>kira</i>
coconut, <i>kelapa</i>	country, <i>negeri; negara</i>
cold, <i>sejuk</i>	courage, <i>keberanian</i>
collapse (to), <i>runtuh; tumbang;</i> <i>roboh</i>	course, <i>kursus</i>
collect (to), <i>kumpul, mengumpul;</i> <i>pungut, memungut</i>	cow, <i>lembu</i>
collection, <i>kutipan</i>	crab, <i>ketam</i>
collide (to), <i>langgar, berlanggar</i>	cradle, <i>bualan</i>
colour, <i>warna</i>	crevice, <i>celah</i>
comb, <i>sikat</i>	criss-cross, <i>sabung-menyabung</i>
comb (to), <i>sikat, bersikat</i>	crow, <i>gagak</i>
come (to), <i>datang</i>	crowd (to), <i>penuhi, memenuhi</i>
	cry (to), <i>tangis, menangis</i>
	culture, <i>kebudayaan</i>

cup, *cawan; piala*  
 cut (to), *potong, memotong;*  
*pedang, memedang*  
 cute, *comel*  
 cut hair (to), *cukur, mencukur*

## D

dance, *tari-menari; tarian*  
 dark, *gelap*  
 date, *tarikh*  
 daughter, *anak perempuan*  
 dawn, *dinihari*  
 day, *hari*  
 day-dream, *angan-angan*  
 decision, *keputusan*  
 debt, *hutang*  
 deed, *jasa*  
 definite, *tentu, tertentu*  
 delicious, *enak; sedap*  
 dentist, *doktor gigi*  
 depart (to) *tolak, bertolak*  
 department, *bahagian; jabatan*  
 destiny, *nasib*  
 diamond, *intan*  
 dictionary, *kamus*  
 die (to), *mati; meninggal dunia*  
 different, *berlainan; lain*  
 difficult, *susah; sukar*  
 dig (to), *gali, menggali*  
 dirt, *kekotoran*  
 dirty, *kotor*  
 discipline, *adab tertib*  
 disorder, *kucar-kacir*  
 distribute (to), *edar*  
 dive (to), *selam, menyelam*  
 divorced (to be), *cerai, bercerai*

do (to), *buat*  
 doctor, *doktor*  
 dog, *anjing*  
 dollar, *ringgit*  
 donate (to), *derma, menderma*  
 don't, *jangan*  
 draw (to), *lukis, melukis*  
 drawing, *lukisan*  
 drawer, *laci*  
 drink (to), *minum*  
 drive (to), *pandu, memandu*  
 driver, *drebar, pemandu*  
 drop (to), *jatuh*  
 duck, *itik*  
 dusk, *senja*  
 Dutch, *Belanda; orang Belanda*  
 duty, *tugas*

## E

eager, *ingin*  
 early, *awal*  
 ear-ring, *anting-anting*  
 east, *timur*  
 easy, *senang*  
 eat (to), *makan*  
 educate (to), *didik, mendidik*  
 educated, *terpelajar*  
 education, *pendidikan*  
 egg, *telur*  
 eight, *lapan*  
 eighteen, *lapan belas*  
 eighth, *kelapan*  
 eldest (the), *yang sulung*  
 elder brother, *abang*  
 elder sister, *kakak*  
 elephant, *gajah*

eleven, *sebelas*  
 emperor, *maharaja*  
 empress, *maharani*  
 empty, *kosong*  
 encouragement, *galakan*  
 end, *penghujung*  
 engine, *enjin*  
 engineer, *jurutera*  
 enemy, *musuh*  
 enter (to), *masuk*  
 entertain with food (to), *jamu*  
 envelope, *sampul surat*  
 envy (to), *dengki; irihati*  
     *era, zaman*  
 error, *kesilapan*  
 essential, *mustahak*  
 estate, *ladang*  
 Europe, *Eropah*  
 evaluate (to), *nilai, menilai*  
 even if, *sungguhpun; walaupun;*  
     *meskipun*  
 evening, *petang*  
 event, *peristiwa; acara*  
 every, *tiap-tiap*  
 every other day, *lat sehari*  
 every other week, *lat seminggu*  
 everything, *serba-serbi*  
 examine (to), *periksa, memeriksa*  
 examination, *peperiksaan*  
 except, *kecuali*  
 exercise, *latihan*  
 excessively, *terlalu*  
 exchange, *tukar, bertukar*  
 exhibition, *pameran*  
 expedition, *ekspedisi*  
 expenses, *perbelanjaan*

expensive, *mahal*  
 experience (to), *alami,*  
     *mengalami*  
 explore (to), *jelajah*  
 expose to wind (to), *angin,*  
     *mengangin*  
 extensive, *luas*  
 extract (to), *petik*

## F

face, *muka*  
 factory, *kilang*  
 failed, *gagal*  
 fall (to), *jatuh*  
 family, *keluarga*  
 fan, *kipas*  
 fare, *tambang*  
 farm, *ladang*  
 farmer, *peladang*  
 fast, *laju; pantas*  
 fast (to), *puasa, berpuasa*  
 fast asleep (to be), *terlena*  
 fasting, *puasa*  
 fat, *gemuk*  
 father, *bapa*  
 fearful, *menakutkan*  
 fee, *yuran*  
 feeling, *perasaan*  
 female (Muslim religious)  
     teacher, *ustazah*  
 fence, *pagar*  
 fertilizer, *baja*  
 fiancée, *tunangan*  
 field, *lapangan; padang*  
 fifteen, *lima belas*  
 fifth, *kelima*

fight (to), *kelahi, berkelahi;*  
*tumbuk, bertumbuk*  
 fight, *perkelahian*  
 file, *fail*  
 find (to), *cari, mencari*  
 finding, *mendapat*  
 fine, *bagus*  
 finger-ring, *cincin*  
 finish (to), *habis*  
 fire, *api*  
 fire (a), *kebakaran*  
 fire-arms, *senjata api*  
 fire-brigade, *pasukan bomba*  
 fire-fly, *kelip-kelip*  
 firm, *firma*  
 first, *pertama*  
 fish, *ikan*  
 fisherman, *nelayan*  
 five, *lima*  
 fix (to), *pasang, memasang*  
 flag, *bendera*  
 flash (to), *memancar*  
 flesh, *daging*  
 flood, *banjir*  
 flooded (to be), *dibanjiri*  
 flower, *bunga*  
 flower-pot, *pasu bunga*  
 flying fox, *keluang*  
 fold, *ganda*  
 follow (to), *ikut, mengikut*  
 fond of (to be), *gemar; sayang*  
 foot, *kaki*  
 for, *untuk*  
 forced (to be), *terpaksa*  
 foreign, *asing*  
 foreign minister, *menteri luar*

forest, *hutan*  
 forget (to), *lupa*  
 fork, *garpu*  
 four, *empat*  
 fourteen, *empat belas*  
 fourth, *keempat*  
 fowl, *ayam*  
 free, *bebas; percuma*  
 French, *Perancis*  
 Friday, *hari Jumaat*  
 friend, *kawan; sahabat; teman*  
 from, *dari; daripada*  
 front of (in), *di hadapan*  
 fruit, *buah*  
 fruit-fly, *bari-bari*  
 fruitful, *berhasil*  
 fruits, *buah-buahan*  
 function, *tugas*

## G

gallon, *gelen*  
 gamble (to), *judi, berjudi*  
 game, *permainan*  
 garden, *kebun; taman*  
 gardener, *tukang kebun*  
 gate, get, *pintu besar*  
 germ, *kuman*  
 get (to), *dapat*  
 get ready (to), *sedia, bersedia*  
 get up (to), *bangun*  
 giant, *raksasa*  
 girl, *budak perempuan*  
 give (to), *beri*  
 glass (the tumbler), *gelas*  
 go (to), *pergi*  
 go across (to), *melintas*

goal, *gol*  
 goat, *kambing*  
 go down (to), *turun*  
 go downstream (to), *hilir, menghilir*  
 go hunting (to), *berburu*  
 go on foot (to), *berjalan kaki*  
 go out (to), *keluar*  
 gold, *emas*  
 good, *baik, bagus*  
 good health (in), *sihat*  
 goods, *barang-barang*  
 goose, *angsa*  
 go towards (to), *menuju*  
 government, *kerajaan*  
 grade, *pangkat*  
 grandfather, *datuk*  
 grapes, *anggur*  
 grass, *rumpit*  
 great, *teragung*  
 greetings, *salam; ucap selamat*  
 ground (to), *tanah*  
 group, *kumpulan*  
 grow (to), *tumbuh*  
 guide (to), *pimpin*  
 gun, *senapang*

## H

hack (to), *kapak, mengapak*  
 hair, *rambut*  
 hall, *dewan*  
 handbag, *beg tangan*  
 handkerchief, *saputangan*  
 hands, *tangan*  
 hang (to), *gantung, menggantung*  
 happy, *gembira; sukacita*

hard, *keras*  
 hardship, *kesukaran*  
 hardworking, *rajin*  
 has to, *kena*  
 hat, *topi*  
 hate (to), *benci*  
 have interest (to), *berminat*  
 have to, *kena*  
 he, *dia; beliau; baginda*  
 head-boy, *ketua murid*  
 Head Teacher, *Guru Besar*  
 health, *kesihatan*  
 healthy, *sihat*  
 heap (a), *longgok*  
 hear (to), *dengar, mendengar*  
 heart, *hati*  
 heartily, *berdekah-dekah*  
 heavy, *berat; lebat*  
 hero, *pahlawan; panglima*  
 hide (to), *bersembunyi*  
 hiding-place, *tempat bersembunyi*  
 hill, *bukit*  
 him, *dia*  
 hire, *sewa, menyewa*  
 history, *sejarah*  
 hit (to), *pukul, memukul*  
 hold (to), *pegang, memegang*  
 hold a picnic (to), *berkelah*  
 holidays, *cuti*  
 home, *rumah; rumahtangga*  
 home (at), *di rumah*  
 hope (to), *harap, berharap*  
 horizon, *ufuk*  
 horse, *kuda*  
 hot, *panas*

house, *rumah*  
 how, *bagaimana*  
 how many, *berapa*  
 how much, *berapa harga*  
 hub, *pusat*  
 hug (to), *peluk, memeluk*  
 human being, *manusia*  
 hungry, *lapar*  
 hunting (to go), *buru, berburu*  
 husband, *suami*  
 hut, *pondok*

## I

I, *saya; aku*  
 I, *teman; patik; hamba; beta*  
 iced-water, *air batu*  
 if, *kalau; jika, jikalau*  
 immediately, *segera*  
 important, *penting*  
 in, *dalam*  
 incite (to), *api, mengapi*  
 income, *pendapatan*  
 independence, *kemerdekaan*  
 inflation, *inflasi*  
 inform (to), *maklumkan*  
 information, *maklumat*  
 inhabitant, *penduduk*  
 inside, *di dalam*  
 inspect (to), *periksa, memeriksa*  
 install (to), *terpasang*  
 interesting, *menarik*  
 invite (to), *jemput, menjemput*  
 iron, *besi*  
 is, *ialah; adalah*  
 island, *pulau*  
 it, *ia*

## J

javelin, *lembing*  
 jealous of (to be), *cemburu*  
 joy, *nikmat*  
 jump (to), *lompat, melompat*  
 jungle, *hutan*  
 just now, *tadi*

## K

kick (to), *sepak, menyepak*  
 keep (to), *simpan, menyimpan*  
 keep (promise) (to), *menepati janji*  
 key, *anak kunci*  
 kill (to), *bunuh*  
 kilo, *kilo*  
 kind, *jenis; mesra*  
 kiss, *cium, bercium*  
 kite, *layang-layang*  
 kitten, *anak kucing*  
 knife, *pisau*  
 knock against (to), *langgar, melanggar*  
 know (to), *tahu; kenal*  
 knowledge, *ilmu; pengetahuan*

## L

lack (to), *kekurangan*  
 ladder, *tangga*  
 ladle (a), *senduk*  
 ladle (to), *senduk, menyenduk*  
 lamp, *lampu*  
 land, *tanah*  
 land (to), *darat, mendarat*  
 language, *bahasa*  
 large, *besar*

late, *lambat*  
 late at night, *larut malam*  
 later, *kemudian*  
 laugh (to), *tertawa*  
 launch (to), *lancar*  
 law, *undang-undang*  
 layer, *lapisan*  
 lazy, *malas*  
 leaf, *daun*  
 leafy (of trees), *rendang*  
 learn (to), *belajar*  
 leave (to), *tolak, bertolak*  
 leave one another (to), *pisah, berpisah*  
 legs, *kaki*  
 lesson, *pelajaran*  
 let (to), *biar*  
 letter, *surat; huruf*  
 library, *perpustakaan*  
 licence, *lesen*  
 lie down (to), *merebahkan diri*  
 lift, *lif*  
 light, *ringan*  
 lightning, *kilat*  
 life, *kehidupan; jiwa*  
 like (to), *suka*  
 limit (to), *had, menghadkan*  
 link, *perhubungan*  
 lion, *singa*  
 list, *senarai*  
 listen (to), *dengar, mendengar*  
 litter, *sampah*  
 live (to), *tinggal*  
 locked, *berkunci*  
 log, *batang*  
 long, *panjang*

long-house, *rumah panjang*  
 long for (to), *ingin*  
 look after (to), *jaga, menjaga*  
 lorry, *lori*  
 loss, *rugi*  
 lot of (a), *banyak*  
 love (to), *sayang; kasih*  
 lump, *ketul*

## M

mad, *gila*  
 Madam, *Puan*  
 magazine, *majalah*  
 magnificent, *indah*  
 mail train, *keretapi mel*  
 make (to), *buat, membuat*  
 make friends (to) *kawan, berkawan*  
 make a promise (to), *janji, berjanji*  
 make a sound (to), *berbunyi*  
 Malay Archipelago, *Kepulauan Melayu*  
 Malay cap, *songkok*  
 Malay language, *bahasa Melayu*  
 Malay people, *orang Melayu*  
 male (muslim religious) teacher, *ustaz*  
 mammoth, *raksasa*  
 manager, *pengurus*  
 mango, *mangga*  
 manners, *adab tertib*  
 many, *banyak*  
 many (of people), *ramai*  
 many kinds, *berbagai-bagai*  
 march (in procession) (to),



<i>berarak</i>	morning, <i>pagi</i>
march past (to), <i>melintas</i>	mosque, <i>masjid</i>
mark, <i>markah</i>	mosquito, <i>nyamuk</i>
marriage, <i>perkahwinan</i>	mother, <i>emak</i>
marry (to), <i>kahwin, berkahwin</i>	mother's conception, <i>kandungan</i>
mat, <i>tikar</i>	<i>ibu</i>
matches, <i>mancis</i>	motion, <i>usul</i>
matters, <i>hal-ehwal</i>	motorcar, <i>motokar</i>
mattress, <i>tilam</i>	mountain, <i>gunung</i>
me, <i>saya</i>	mountain range, <i>banjaran</i>
meaning, <i>erti</i>	<i>gunung</i>
measure (to), <i>ukur, mengukur</i>	moustache, <i>misai</i>
meat, <i>daging</i>	move (to), <i>gerak, bergerak</i>
medical attention, <i>rawatan</i>	movement, <i>gerak-geri;</i>
medicine, <i>ubat</i>	<i>pergerakan</i>
meet (to), <i>jumpa, berjumpa</i>	Mr., <i>Encik</i>
meeting, <i>mesyuarat; perjumpaan</i>	Mrs., <i>Puan</i>
member, <i>ahli</i>	multi, <i>berbagai-bagai; pelbagai</i>
memorize (to), <i>hafaz</i>	Muslim, <i>Islam</i>
merchant, <i>saudagar</i>	must, <i>mesti</i>
midday, <i>tengah hari</i>	
middle, <i>tengah</i>	<b>N</b>
midnight, <i>tengah malam</i>	nail (a), <i>paku</i>
mile, <i>batu</i>	nail (to), <i>paku, memaku</i>
military, <i>tentera</i>	name, <i>nama</i>
milk, <i>susu</i>	name (to), <i>nama, menamakan</i>
mine (to), <i>melombong</i>	nation, <i>negara; tanah air</i>
minister, <i>menteri</i>	navigator, <i>pelayar</i>
minute, <i>minit</i>	near, <i>dekat</i>
mirror, <i>cermin</i>	necessary, <i>semestinya</i>
Miss, <i>Cik</i>	necessary, <i>mustahak</i>
Monday, <i>hari Isnin</i>	need (to), <i>memerlukan</i>
money, <i>wang</i>	needed, <i>perlukan</i>
monument, <i>tugu</i>	needful, <i>perlu</i>
moon, <i>bulan</i>	needle, <i>jarum</i>
more, <i>lebih; lagi</i>	neighbour, <i>jiran</i>

never, *tak pernah*  
 new, *baru*  
 news, *berita*  
 newspaper, *suratkhabar*  
 nicely, *elok-elok*  
 night, *malam*  
 nine, *sembilan*  
 nineteen, *sembilan belas*  
 ninth, *kesembilan*  
 no, *tidak*  
 not, *bukan*  
 not so, *tidak berapa; tidak begitu*  
 not yet, *belum*  
 novel, *novel*  
 now, *sekarang*  
 nurse, *jururawat*

## O

oar (an), *dayung*  
 obedient, *patuh*  
 observe (to), *perhatikan*  
 occasion, *majlis*  
 ocean, *lautan*  
 office, *pejabat*  
 oil, *minyak*  
 officer, *pegawai*  
 oh, *oh*  
 old, *tua; buruk; lama*  
 on, *di atas*  
 one, *satu*  
 only, *sahaja*  
 open (to), *buka, membuka*  
 open the mouth (to), *nganga*,  
*menganga*  
 or, *atau*  
 orphan, *anak yatim*

other, *lain*  
 outside, *di luar*  
 over, *di atas*

## P

packet, *bungkus, bungkus*  
 padlock, *ibu kunci; mangga*  
 page, *mukasurat*  
 paint (to), *cat, mengecat*  
 pan, *kuali*  
 paper, *kertas*  
 parade, *perbarisan*  
 parents, *ibu bapa*  
 part, *bahagian*  
 participant, *peserta*  
 party, *majlis*  
 pass through (of water), *telap*  
 pay (to), *bayar, membayar*  
 peaceful, *aman*  
 pen, pen; *pena*  
 pencil, *pensel*  
 people, *manusia; rakyat*  
 perhaps,  *mungkin; agaknya*  
 perform duties (to), *bertugas*  
 perished (to be), *terkorban*  
 person, *orang*  
 pheasant, *kuangkuit*  
 physical exercise (to do), *senam*,  
*bersenam*  
 picture, *gambar*  
 piece, *helai; keping*  
 pillar, *tiang*  
 pineapple, *nanas*  
 pirate, *perompak; lanun*  
 place, *tempat*  
 place (to), *letak, meletak*

plane (a), <i>ketam</i>	print (to), <i>cap, mengecap; cetak, mencetak</i>
plane (to), <i>ketam, mengetam</i>	prize, <i>hadiah</i>
plank, <i>papan</i>	problem, <i>masalah</i>
plant (to), <i>tanam, menanam</i>	profit, <i>untung</i>
play (to), <i>main, bermain</i>	programme, <i>acara</i>
pleased, <i>sukacita</i>	progressive, <i>maju</i>
pleasure, <i>nikmat</i>	project, <i>rancangan</i>
plentiful, <i>lebat; banyak</i>	promise, <i>janji</i>
plough (a), <i>tenggala</i>	promoted (to be), <i>naik pangkat</i>
plough (to), <i>tenggala, menenggala</i>	proof, <i>dalil; bukti</i>
pluck (to), <i>petik</i>	property, <i>harta</i>
pocket, <i>saku; kocek</i>	proprietor, <i>tuan punya</i>
point (to the), <i>tepat</i>	prosperous, <i>makmur</i>
poison, <i>racun</i>	provisions, <i>bekalan</i>
pole (a), <i>galah, menggalah</i>	public, <i>ramai; orang ramai</i>
police, <i>polis</i>	publish (to), <i>siar, menyiarkan</i>
polish (to), <i>gilap, menggilap</i>	pull (to), <i>tarik, menarik</i>
pond, <i>kolam</i>	pull down (to), <i>runtuh</i>
pool, <i>kolam; danau</i>	pump (to), <i>pam, mengepam</i>
poor, <i>miskin</i>	pupil, <i>murid</i>
portion, <i>bahagian</i>	purse (a), <i>pundi-pundi</i>
Portuguese (the), <i>orang Portugis</i>	push (to), <i>tolak</i>
possibly, <i>mungkin</i>	put (to), <i>bubuh</i>
post, <i>tiang</i>	put off (light), <i>padam</i>
potatoes, <i>ubi kentang</i>	put up roof (to), <i>atap, mengatap</i>
pouring, <i>mencurah-curah</i>	
pray (to), <i>bersembahyang</i>	<b>Q</b>
present (a), <i>hadiah</i>	question, <i>soalan</i>
present (to be), <i>hadir; berada</i>	question (to), <i>soal, menyoal</i>
president, <i>yang dipertua</i>	quick, <i>cepat</i>
pretty, <i>cantik</i>	quiet, <i>pendiam</i>
price, <i>harga</i>	
Prime Minister, <i>Perdana Menteri</i>	<b>R</b>
prince, <i>putera</i>	rabbit, <i>arnab</i>
princess, <i>puteri</i>	radio set, <i>peti radio</i>

raft, <i>rakit</i>	rest (to), <i>berehat</i>
rain, <i>hujan</i>	restaurant, <i>restoran</i>
rain-coat, <i>baju hujan</i>	return (to), <i>balik</i>
rank, <i>pangkat</i>	rice-field, <i>sawah</i> ; (dry) <i>huma</i>
rather, <i>agak</i>	rich, <i>kaya</i>
reach, <i>sampai</i>	river, <i>sungai</i>
read (to), <i>baca, membaca</i>	river turtle, <i>labi-labi</i>
really, <i>sungguh</i>	road, <i>jalan</i>
receive (to), <i>terima, menerima</i> ; <i>sambut, menyambut</i>	roar (to), <i>mengaum</i>
recently, <i>baru-baru ini</i>	robber, <i>perompak</i> ; <i>penyamun</i>
recognize (to), <i>cam, mengenali</i> ; <i>kenal</i>	roof, <i>atap</i>
red, <i>merah</i>	room, <i>bilik</i>
refreshing, <i>menyegarkan</i>	rope, <i>tali</i>
region, <i>rantau</i>	round, <i>bulat</i>
relate (to) <i>hal, menghalkan</i>	row (to), <i>dayung</i> ; <i>mendayung</i>
release (to), <i>lepas</i>	rubber, <i>getah</i>
reliable, <i>boleh dipercayai</i>	rule, <i>peraturan</i>
religion, <i>agama</i>	ruler, <i>pembaris</i> ; <i>raja</i>
remain (to), <i>tinggal</i>	run (to), <i>lari</i> ; <i>berlari</i>
remember (to), <i>ingat</i>	rush (to), <i>berebut-rebut</i>
rent (to), <i>sewa, menyewa</i>	
repair (to), <i>baiki, membaiki</i>	<b>S</b>
reply (to), <i>jawab, menjawab</i>	safe, <i>selamat</i>
represent (to), <i>wakil, mewakili</i>	said, <i>tersebut</i> ; <i>telah berkata</i>
representative, <i>wakil</i>	sail (to), <i>layar, berlayar</i>
research, <i>penyelidikan</i>	Salary Commission, <i>Suruhanjaya Gaji</i>
resemble (to), <i>serupa</i> , <i>menyerupai</i>	salt, <i>garam</i>
reside permanently (to), <i>menetap</i>	salute, <i>tabik hormat</i>
resolution, <i>keputusan</i> ; <i>resolusi</i>	same, <i>sama</i>
responsibility, <i>tanggungjawab</i>	satay, <i>sate</i>
responsible (to be), <i>bertanggungjawab</i>	satisfactory, <i>memuaskan</i>
rest, <i>rehat</i>	Saturday, <i>hari Sabtu</i>
	save (to), <i>menyelamatkan</i>
	saw (a), <i>gergaji</i>
	saw (to), <i>gergaji, menggergaji</i>

school, <i>sekolah</i>	shake (to), <i>goyang; goncang;</i>
science, <i>sains</i>	<i>gegar</i>
scholarship, <i>biasiswa</i>	shake hands (to), <i>jabat, berjabat</i>
score (goal) (to), <i>jaring,</i>	<i>tangan</i>
<i>menjaringkan</i>	sharp, <i>tajam, tepat</i>
scout, <i>pengakap</i>	shave (to), <i>cukur, mencukur</i>
scratch (to), <i>garu, menggaru</i>	she, <i>dia; beliau</i>
scrub (to), <i>gosok, menggosok</i>	sheep, <i>biri-biri</i>
sea, <i>laut</i>	sheet, <i>helai</i>
sea-weed, <i>agar-agar</i>	ship, <i>kapal</i>
search (to), <i>cari, mencari</i>	shirt, <i>kemeja</i>
second, <i>kedua</i>	shoe, <i>kasut</i>
secondary school, <i>sekolah</i>	shoot (to), <i>tembak, menembak</i>
<i>menengah</i>	shop, <i>kedai</i>
secretary, <i>setiausaha</i>	shop-house, <i>rumah kedai</i>
see (to), <i>lihat, melihat; tengok,</i>	shopkeeper, <i>pekedai</i>
<i>menengok</i>	short, <i>pendek; singkat; rendah</i>
seem (to), <i>seolah-olah;</i>	shout, <i>jerit, menjerit</i>
<i>nampaknya</i>	show, <i>pertunjukkan</i>
send (to), <i>kirim, mengirim;</i>	show (to), <i>menunjukkan</i>
<i>hantar, menghantar</i>	sick, <i>sakit</i>
sentence, <i>ayat</i>	silent (to be), <i>diam</i>
sentiment, <i>sentimen</i>	silk, <i>sutera</i>
separated from others (to be),	silver, <i>perak</i>
<i>pecah, berpecah; cerai;</i>	sincere, <i>jujur</i>
<i>bercerai</i>	sing (to), <i>nyanyi, menyanyi</i>
servant, <i>orang gaji</i>	single-handed, <i>seorang diri</i>
set foot (to), <i>jejak; menjejakkan</i>	sit (to), <i>duduk</i>
<i>kaki</i>	six, <i>enam</i>
set free (to), <i>lepaskan</i>	sixteen, <i>enam belas</i>
seven, <i>tujuh</i>	sixth, <i>keenam</i>
seventeen, <i>tujuh belas</i>	skin, <i>kulit</i>
seventh, <i>ketujuh</i>	sky, <i>langit</i>
sever (to) <i>putus</i>	slander, <i>fitnah</i>
severed, <i>terputus</i>	slash (to), <i>parang, memarang;</i>
sew (to), <i>jahit, menjahit</i>	<i>pedang, memedang</i>

sleep (to), <i>tidur</i>	special, <i>istimewa</i>
slope, <i>lereng</i>	spectators, <i>penonton</i>
slowly, <i>perlahan-lahan</i>	spell (to), <i>eja, mengeja</i>
small, <i>kecil</i>	spend the night (to), <i>bermalam</i>
smart, <i>kemas</i>	splendid, <i>indah</i>
smoke, (to), <i>hisap, menghisap</i> ( <i>rokok</i> )	sponsor (to), <i>anjur,</i> <i>menganjurkan</i>
smoke a cigarette (to), <i>rokok,</i> <i>merokok</i>	spoon, <i>camca</i>
smoothen (to), <i>melicinkan</i>	sports, <i>sukan</i>
snake, <i>ular</i>	stab each other (to), <i>tikam,</i> <i>bertikam</i>
snap (to), <i>putus</i>	staff, <i>kakitangan</i>
snare (a), <i>jerat</i>	stairs, <i>tangga</i>
snare (to), <i>jerat, menjerat</i>	stand (to), <i>diri, berdiri</i>
snatch (to), <i>ragut, meragut</i>	station, <i>balai; stesen</i>
snow, <i>salji</i>	star, <i>bintang</i>
so, <i>begitu; demikian</i>	started, <i>bermula</i>
soap, <i>sabun</i>	state, <i>negara</i>
society, <i>masyarakat</i>	state (to), <i>menyatakan</i>
soft, <i>lembut</i>	status, <i>taraf</i>
soil, <i>tanah</i>	steal (to), <i>curi, mencuri</i>
soldiers, <i>perajurit; askar</i>	step, <i>langkah</i>
something, <i>sesuatu</i>	step on (to), <i>pijak, memijak</i>
sometimes, <i>kadang-kadang</i>	still, lagi, <i>masih</i>
son, <i>anak lelaki</i>	stinking, <i>busuk</i>
song, <i>lagu</i>	stitch (to), <i>jahit, menjahit</i>
songster, <i>biduan</i>	stockings, <i>setoḱin</i>
songstress, <i>biduanita</i>	stomach, <i>perut</i>
so that, <i>supaya</i>	stone, <i>batu</i>
sound, <i>bunyi</i>	stop (to), <i>henti, berhenti</i>
soup, <i>sup</i>	storey, <i>tingkat</i>
south, <i>selatan</i>	story, <i>riwayat; cerita</i>
South Pole, <i>Kutub Selatan</i>	story (short), <i>cerpen</i>
souvenir, <i>cenderamata</i>	stout-hearted, <i>cekal</i>
space, <i>kawasan</i>	stout-heartedness, <i>kecekalan</i>
spear, <i>lembing</i>	straight, <i>lurus</i>

strike (of a clock), *berbunyi*  
 stroll (to), *bersiar-siar*  
 strong, *kuat*  
 strong (of wind), *kencang*  
 struggle for something (to),  
     *berebut-rebut*  
 student, *penuntut; pelajar*  
 subject, *rakyat; mata pelajaran*  
 success, *kejayaan*  
 subscription, *yuran*  
 successful, *berjaya*  
 suck (to), *hisap, menghisap*  
 such as, *seperti*  
 suffering, *penderitaan*  
 suggestion, *syor*  
 summit, *kemuncak*  
 Sunday, *hari Ahad*  
 sunk, *terbenam*  
 surface, *permukaan*  
 surging to and fro, *berpusu-pusu*  
 surrender (to), *menyerah diri*  
 surrounding, *sekitar*  
 sweep (to), *sapu, menyapu*  
 sweets, *gula-gula*  
 switch, *suis*  
 sword, *pedang*  
 sway (to), *buai;*  
     *terumbang-ambing*  
 swim (to), *renang, berenang*  
 switch on (to), *pasang,*  
     *memasang*  
 swift,  *pantas*

## T

table, *meja*  
 tail, *ekor*

take (to), *ambil, mengambil*  
 take place (to), *berlangsung*  
 talent, *bakat*  
 talk, *perbualan*  
 tall, *tinggi*  
 taste (to), *rasa, merasa*  
 tasteless, *tawar*  
 tax, *cukai*  
 taxi, *teksi*  
 tea, *teh*  
 teach (to), *ajar, mengajar; asuh*  
 teacher, *guru*  
 technology, *teknologi*  
 telephone, *telefon*  
 tell (to), *beritahu, memberitahu*  
 temple, *kuil*  
 temporary, *sementara*  
 ten, *sepuluh*  
 tenth, *kese puluh*  
 test, *ujian*  
 than, *daripada*  
 thanks, *terima kasih*  
 that, *yang; bahawa*  
 that way, *begitu*  
 them, *mereka*  
 then, *kemudian; maka*  
 they, *mereka*  
 thick, *tebal*  
 thin, *kurus; nipis*  
 thing, *barang*  
 think (to), *fikir, berfikir,*  
     *memikirkan*  
 third, *ketiga*  
 thirsty, *dahaga*  
 thirteen, *tiga belas*  
 this way, *begini*

thorn, <i>duri</i>	trade (to), <i>berniaga</i>
thorough, <i>rapi</i>	Trade Union, <i>Kesatuan Sekerja</i>
thought, <i>angan-angan; fikiran</i>	train, <i>keretapi</i>
thread, <i>benang</i>	train (to), <i>latih, melatih</i>
threatened (to be), <i>terancam</i>	transferred (to be), <i>tukar, bertukar</i>
three, <i>tiga</i>	transport, <i>kenderaan; pengangkutan</i>
through, <i>menerusi; melalui</i>	travel about (to), <i>jelajah; menjelajah</i>
thunder, <i>guruh</i>	traveller, <i>pengembara</i>
Thursday, <i>hari Khamis</i>	travel to and fro (to), <i>berulang-alik</i>
ticket, <i>tiket</i>	tray, <i>dulang</i>
tie (to), <i>ikat, mengikat</i>	tree, <i>pokok</i>
ties, <i>perhubungan</i>	treasury, <i>perbendaharaan</i>
tiger, <i>harimau</i>	troupe, <i>pasukan</i>
till, <i>hingga, sehingga</i>	trousers, <i>seluar</i>
timber, <i>balak</i>	truly, <i>benar</i>
time, <i>masa; kala; kali; waktu; tempoh; zaman</i>	trunk (of elephant), <i>belalai</i>
tin, <i>timah</i>	try (to), <i>cuba</i>
tin-ore, <i>bijih timah</i>	Tuesday, <i>hari Selasa</i>
tiny, <i>halus</i>	tune, <i>lagu</i>
tired, <i>letih</i>	twelve, <i>dua belas</i>
title, <i>gelaran</i>	twenty, <i>dua puluh</i>
to, <i>kepada; ke</i>	twinkle (to), <i>berkelip-kelip</i>
today, <i>hari ini</i>	two, <i>dua</i>
together, <i>bersama-sama</i>	type (to), <i>taip, menaip</i>
tomorrow, <i>esok</i>	
too, <i>terlampau, juga</i>	<b>U</b>
too much, <i>terlampau</i>	ugly, <i>buruk; hodoh</i>
tooth, <i>gigi</i>	umbrella, <i>payung</i>
top, <i>kemuncak</i>	unanimously, <i>dengan sebulat suara</i>
tortoise (a), <i>kura-kura</i>	unceasingly, <i>tidak berhenti-henti</i>
total, <i>jumlah</i>	uncle, <i>bapa saudara</i>
tourist, <i>pelancong</i>	underneath, <i>di bawah</i>
towards, <i>terhadap</i>	
tower, <i>menara</i>	
town, <i>pekan, bandar</i>	



universe, *alam*  
 untie a knot (to), *orak, mengorak*  
 until, *hingga, sehingga*  
 use (to), *pakai, memakai; guna, menggunakan*  
 useful, *berguna*  
 usually, *biasanya*

**V**

vacant, *kosong*  
 varied, *pelbagai*  
 vegetable, *sayur*  
 verily, *bahkan*  
 very much, *sangat*  
 victim, *mangsa*  
 victorious, *menang*  
 village, *kampung*  
 videotape recorder, *perakam video*  
 visible (to be), *nampak*  
 visit (to), *lawat, melawat*  
 visit (to), *ziarah, menziarah*  
 volunteer, *sukarela*

**W**

wait (to), *tunggu*  
 waiter, *pelayan lelaki*  
 waitress, *pelayan perempuan*  
 wake up (to), *bangun*  
 walk (to), *jalan, berjalan*  
 wall, *dinding*  
 war, *perang*  
 ware-house, *gudang*  
 warrior, *hulubalang*  
 wash (to), *basuh, membasuh*  
 watch, *jam*

watch (to), *saksi, menyaksikan; memerhatikan; lihat, melihat*  
 water, *air*  
 water (to), *siram, menyiram*  
 ways and means, *ikhtiar*  
 we, *kita; kami*  
 wealthy (the), *hartawan*  
 weapon, *senjata*  
 wear (to), *pakai, memakai*  
 weather, *cuaca*  
 Wednesday, *hari Rabu*  
 week, *minggu*  
 welfare, *kebijakan*  
 well, *telaga*  
 well-known, *terkenal*  
 well-to-do, *berada*  
 west, *barat*  
 western, *barat*  
 wet, *basah*  
 what, *apa; yang*  
 wheat, *gandum*  
 when, *bila; manakala; ketika; apabila*  
 where (to), *ke mana*  
 which, *yang; yang mana*  
 while (a) *sebentar*  
 whisper (to), *bisik, berbisik*  
 who, *siapa*  
 whose, *siapa punya*  
 why, *mengapa*  
 widow, *janda*  
 wife, *isteri*  
 wind, *angin*  
 window, *tingkap*  
 wipe (to), *lap, mengelap*  
 with, *dengan; pada; serta*

with ease, *dengan mudah*  
without, *tanpa*  
witness (to), *saksi, menyaksikan*  
woman, *perempuan*  
wood, *kayu*  
word, *kata, perkataan*  
work, *kerja*  
work (to), *kerja, bekerja*  
work hard (to), *berusaha*  
world, *dunia*  
worried (to be), *bimbang*  
wreath, *kalung bunga*  
write (to), *tulis, menulis*  
writing, *tulisan*  
wrong (to be in the ), *bersalah*

**Y**  
year, *tahun*  
yes, *ya*  
yesterday, *kelmarin*  
you, *awak; engkau; anda; tuan;*  
*encik*  
young, *muda*  
younger brother, *adik*  
younger sister, *adik*  
youth, *pemuda*  
youth (female), *beliawanis*  
youth (male), *belia*

**Z**  
zero, *kosong*



# MALAY FOR EVERYONE

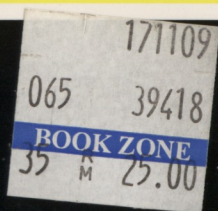
Designed to Help Learners Understand Grammar,  
Master Reading and Writing Skills

MALAY FOR EVERYONE is a specially designed teach-yourself guide for those who are conversant in English and have a desire to learn and master the Malay language in the shortest time possible.

This book guarantees thorough grounding in all the basic elements of the language, thus enabling learners to acquire a practical knowledge of the Malay language. Written with the learner's needs in mind, the lessons within have been methodically prepared and arranged to ensure rapid language acquisition and mastery.

Learners will find this edition especially useful as it has been revised and updated to accommodate new terms and words that have been incorporated into the Malay language in recent years. This easy-to-use self-study guide will enable learners to secure a confident and polished command of the Malay language.

Other books in the series  
CHINESE CONVERSATION MADE EASY  
CHINESE FOR EVERYONE  
ENGLISH ESSENTIALS THE EASY WAY  
ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE  
ENGLISH FOR MALAYSIANS  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR FOR EVERYONE  
FILIPINO FOR EVERYONE  
JAPANESE FOR EVERYONE  
MASTERING ENGLISH THE EASY WAY  
VIETNAMESE FOR EVERYONE



Pelanduk  
Publications

ISBN 978-967-978-322-3  
ISBN 967-978-322-7



9 789679 783223